

FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

AND

NATIONAL CANCER INSTITUTE

+ + +

WORKSHOP ON

TUMOR VACCINES

+ + +

Friday, December 11, 1998

+ + +

The workshop commenced at 8:00 a.m., in the Masur Auditorium, Building 10, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland.

SPEAKERS PRESENT:

RAJ PURI, M.D., Ph.D.

PHILIP D. NOGUCHI, M.D.

BERNARD A. FOX, Ph.D.

GREGORY PLAUTZ, M.D.

ERNEST W. YANKEE, Ph.D.

JAMES J. MULE, Ph.D.

DONALD L. MORTON, M.D.

RICHARD A. YOUNG, Ph.D.

SPEAKERS PRESENT (Continued):

MICHAEL G. HANNA, JR., Ph.D.

JEANNE M. NOVAK, Ph.D.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

MARVIN I. SIEGEL, Ph.D.

JAY P. SIEGEL, M.D.

MARIO SZNOL, M.D.

STEVEN A. ROSENBERG, M.D.

JEFFREY S. WEBER, M.D.

PETER P. LEE, M.D.

H. KIM LYERLY, M.D.

MARY L. (NORA) DISIS, M.D.

JEFFREY SCHLOM, Ph.D.

JAY BERZOFSKY, M.D.

NICHOLAS P. RESTIFO, M.D.

PATRICIA KEEGAN, M.D.

SAMIR KHLIEF, M.D.

RICHARD M. SIMON, D.Sc.

JONATHAN W. UHR, M.D.

JAY J. GREENBLATT, Ph.D.

DAVE S.B. HOON, Ph.D.

CARLETON C. STEWART, Ph.D.

ABDUR RAZZAQUE, Ph.D.

SPEAKERS PRESENT (Continued):

GERALD E. MARTI, M.D., Ph.D.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

C O N T E N T S

	<u>PAGE</u>
Section III, Autologous and Allogeneic Tumor Cells as Tumor Vaccines, Moderators Noguchi and Fox:	
Autologous Short-term Cultured Tumor Cell as Antigens for tumor Vaccine, Gregory Plautz, M.D. 8	
Regulatory Requirements for the Charac- terization of a Hapten-modified Autologous Tumor Vaccine, Ernest W. Yankee, Ph.D. 28	
Dendritic Cell-based Vaccines Utilizing Tumor Lysates: Experimental and Clinical Studies, James J. Mule, Ph.D. 39	
Characterization of Polyvalent Allogeneic Vaccines, Donald L. Morton, M.D. 55	
Autologous or Allogeneic Tumor Derived Heat Shock Proteins-Peptide Complex as Cancer Vaccine, Richard A. Young, Ph.D. 74	
Section IV: Preclinical Strategies and Immunological Assessment in Early Clinical Trials of Tumor Vaccines, Moderators Jay P. Siegel, M.D., and Mario Sznol, M.D.: 128	
Cancer Vaccines Based on the Identification of Genes Encoding Cancer Regression Antigens, Steven A. Rosenberg, M.D., Ph.D. 130	
Immune Response in Patients Receiving Peptide Pulsed Vaccines for Melanoma and Cervical Dysplasia, Jeffrey S. Weber, M.D. Ph.D. 156	
Immune Monitoring with MHC/peptide Tetramers, Peter P. Lee, M.D. 178	

C O N T E N T S (Continued)PAGE**S A G CORP.**

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

Assays for Monitoring a CEA Peptide-induced
Immunological Response in Dendritic Cell
Trial, H. Kim Lyerly, M.D. 191

Peptide-based Vaccines for Cancer
Immunotherapy, Laboratory Monitoring in
Clinical Trials, Mary L. Disis, M.D. 211

Multiple Co-stimulatory Molecules Synergize
to Enhance T Cell Activation, Jeffrey
Schlom, Ph.D. 232

Optimization of Antigen-specific T Cell
Responses for Antitumor and Antiviral
Activity, Jay A. Berzofsky, M.D. 250

Cancer therapy Using a Self-replicating RNA
Vaccine, Nicholas P. Restifo, M.D. 268

Immune Deviation: A Mechanism for Tumor
Vaccine Failure, Bernard A. Fox, Ph.D. 284

Session V: Detection and Characterization of Tumor
Cells in Cellular Vaccines, Jonathan W. Uhr, M.D.
and Jay J. Greenblatt, Ph.D., Moderators

Detection and Characterization of
Carcinoma Cells in Blood, Jonathan W.
Uhr, M.D. 336

Detection of Occult Tumor Cells in Body Fluids
and Lymphoid Tissues by a Multiple Marker
PCR Assay, Dave S.B. Hoon, Ph.D. 353

Detection of Cancer Cells in Bone Marrow by
High Speed Cell Sorting, Carleton C. Stewart,
Ph.D. 376

Closing Remarks, Philip D. Noguchi, M.D. 406

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

P R O C E E D I N G S

(8:00 a.m.)

DR. PURI: If you'll please take your seats, this will begin our second day of the workshop.

An announcement. The company who's making a videotape of the entire program, and if you're interested in getting a copy of the videotape or on CD-ROM, please contact the gentleman in the back. There is a form you just fill out, and he'll be happy to send you a copy. So you could order your entire program in the videotape.

On behalf of the organizing committee, I'd like to thank all the participants of this workshop who have made this first day a very productive conference as I heard from many, many audience, and I hope that today also we have a very full schedule, and it's going to be equally productive as it was yesterday.

I'd like to encourage our audience to please freely participate in the panel discussions in all three sessions which we are going to have today.

With that note, I would like to introduce the moderators for the first session,

S A G C O R P .

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Session No. III, this morning, and the moderators
2 are Dr. Philip Noguchi, who's the Director of the
3 Regional Cellular and Gene Therapy Center for
4 Biologics and Evaluation Research, and the co-
5 moderator is Dr. Bernard Fox, who's Associate
6 Professor of Immunology and the Chief, Laboratory of
7 Molecular Tumor Immunology, at Earle A. Chiles
8 Research Institute.

9 Dr. Noguchi.

10 DR. NOGUCHI: Thanks, Raj.

11 As Raj was saying, we do have a full
12 schedule, but I want to just take one or two minutes
13 to, first of all, thank Raj directly for putting
14 together such a wonderful program.

15 Now, today this first session is really
16 where the rubber hits the road, I think, because
17 what we have said before, you've learned about what
18 FDA does in general. You've learned something about
19 the newer dendritic cell characterization, but when
20 you start putting it into patients, we come back to
21 the same basic things.

22 First of all, what is it that you're
23 putting in? How can we best understand what you
24 have there? Is there anything that can tell us what
25 when you put that product into the patient, that it

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 actually is going to have some activity? We're not
2 going to be talking about whether it works or not,
3 but you don't want to just be putting in a bunch of
4 dead cells, as an example, because we really don't
5 think that's an appropriate thing to do.

6 And then, finally, how can we all do
7 everything that we've done up to now, but do it even
8 better? Because, after all, for our patients, and
9 that includes not just us, but certainly all of the
10 investigators, what you're looking for is really an
11 effect on the patient that will benefit him or her.

12 Now, that's a big challenge, but I think
13 our opening talk by Dr. Plautz today on a very novel
14 vaccine, which I think you're going to enjoy quite a
15 bit because it is very well characterized, and it
16 does have some nuances to it that are going to be
17 very important in our further discussion.

18 So if I could have Dr. Plautz, please.

19 DR. PLAUTZ: Thanks.

20 What I'm going to talk to you today --
21 if I could have the first slide -- I'm going to talk
22 to you today about our use of autologous short-term
23 cultured tumor cells as antigens for tumor vaccines,
24 and after all of the wonderful talks we heard
25 yesterday about dendritic cells, the different

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 preparations of dendritic cells, different ways to
2 load them with antigens, I feel a little bit like
3 I'm trying to sell you a Chevy after you've already
4 test driven a Porsche.

5 But I think it's important to keep in
6 mind that although we understand quite a bit about
7 how the immune system can eradicate tumors in mice,
8 there's quite a bit we don't understand about how
9 the immune system responds to tumors in human
10 patients, many of whom have had a co-evolution of
11 their tumor with their immune system for a period of
12 months, if not years. So I think that's an
13 important thing to keep in mind.

14 And a field, I think it's important for
15 us to hedge our bets and look at a number of
16 options, treatment options and collect data on what
17 is a very complex biologic process so that we can
18 evaluate and learn more about the system.

19 So what I'll try and convince you of
20 today is that autologous short-term cultured tumor
21 cells are useful and that they can provide us some
22 interesting data.

23 Now, I'll just start with our rationale
24 for using these cells, and the first point is that
25 autologous tumor cells contain unique antigens and

S A G CORP.

1 potentially are a source of MHC Class I and Class II
2 epitopes.

3 I'd like to start with this first point.
4 It's become very clear over the past several years
5 that cancer is a disease of genetic instability.
6 Some of these genetic changes contribute to the
7 transformed phenotype; some contribute to the
8 metastatic potential or potential to recruit blood
9 vessels; but there's also probably a whole host of
10 genetic changes that occur that have a very subtle
11 phenotype and many that that's probably just the tip
12 of the iceberg. There are probably many other
13 genetic changes that occur just as a byproduct of
14 genetic instability, and that these can potentially
15 give rise to unique proteins that can be recognized
16 by the immune system.

17 Now, that's theoretical. There's also
18 some very hard experimental evidence that carcinogen
19 induced animal tumors contain unique antigens as the
20 immunodominant epitopes, and actually this was first
21 described one year before I was even born by Prenin
22 Mahin (phonetic), and more recently Primad
23 Shivastaves has shown that the antigens carried by
24 heat shock proteins also tend to be unique for
25 different tumors.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And in our own system, using adoptive
2 transfer T cells, we find that the response that is
3 generated in tumor draining lymph nodes is
4 exquisitely specific for the tumor that was used to
5 synthesize, and not even cross-reactive against
6 different tumors of the same histologic type
7 generated in the same litter of mice by the same
8 carcinogen.

9 So I think this is a very important
10 point that we should not force, that the
11 experimental evidence suggests that the
12 immunodominant antigens are unique to tumors.

13 The other thing is that autologous tumor
14 cells can serve as a source for Class I and Class II
15 epitopes, and we're very interested in looking at
16 treatment of brain tumors, and what we found in our
17 experimental models is that CD-4 cells are crucial
18 to this process.

19 And actually under the right culture
20 conditions, CD-4 cells alone, in the absence of CD-8
21 cells, can eradicate tumors, and the tumor that we
22 use is Class II negative. So I think it's important
23 that we also keep in mind a source of Class II
24 epitopes.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 The second point is that unlike the
2 field with melanoma, where a number of very
3 important advances have been made in identifying and
4 characterizing tumor antigens, for many tumors the
5 tissue restricted or shared tumor antigens have just
6 not been identified and characterized at a molecular
7 level. So we just don't have these reagents
8 available for some types of tumors, and especially
9 for the gliomas which we're interested in studying.

10 So that provides a rationale for using
11 autologous tumor cells. Now, in terms of the point
12 of short-term culture, what we found is that -- and
13 I'll show you some slides to demonstrate this in a
14 minute -- is that the short-term culture can remove
15 accessory cells that contaminate the original tumor
16 digest, and also there's quite a bit of necrotic
17 debris in the original tumor digest that can be
18 eliminated by just a simple process of short term
19 culture.

20 What I'd like to do is just run you
21 through our protocol so that you have an idea of how
22 we use the tumor cells, the vaccine.

23 First of all, we obtain tumor samples
24 fresh from the pathologist at the time of surgery.
25 These are enzymatically digested to prepare a single

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cell suspension, and we take an aliquot of these
2 cells; we freeze them; and then the remainder are
3 grown for a period of two to four weeks, and I'll
4 describe this step in a little bit more detail in
5 just a minute.

6 The second step is that the patients are
7 vaccinated for renal cell carcinoma one month after
8 surgery or for the malignant brain tumors after the
9 patients have completed their radiation therapy.
10 The culture tumor cells -- we use the dose of 20
11 million -- are irradiated and then mixed with GM-CSF
12 as an adjuvant. These are injected intradermally on
13 the upper thigh, and then GM-CSF is injected into
14 the vaccine site for an additional three days.

15 I'd like to make one comment about the
16 vaccination. Prior to using GM-CSF, we used
17 autologous tumor cells mixed with BCG, and this
18 caused severe ulceration in some of these patients,
19 especially the brain tumor patients, many of whom
20 have some degree of immunosuppression.

21 And in contrast to that, this is very
22 well tolerated. The mixture of GM-CSF with the
23 autologous tumor cells causes about a two to three
24 centimeter area of erythema and a smaller area of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 induration right at the injection site, but it's
2 very well tolerated.

3 Now, this is due to the combination of
4 GM-CSF and the tumor cells because when we inject
5 tumor cells alone at a distant site for DTH
6 response, here's no erythema, and additionally, when
7 you inject GM-CSF, by itself it doesn't cause
8 erythema.

9 So it's really this mixture that causes
10 this local reaction.

11 Now, this also causes a reaction in
12 draining lymph nodes, and we see hypertrophy of
13 draining lymph nodes that occurs over the subsequent
14 week. So nine days after the vaccination, we remove
15 the vaccine sites.

16 And just one little caveat here. We're
17 using vaccination as one step in a chain of events,
18 and for our purposes vaccination is given as a
19 single injection, and it is used solely for the
20 purpose to sensitize T cells and draining lymph
21 nodes.

22 So the requirements and the optimal
23 conditions for this type of vaccination may or may
24 not differ from successful strategies for

S A G CORP.

1 vaccination for active immunotherapy. So I'd just
2 like you to keep that in mind.

3 Once we obtained the lymph node T cells,
4 they're dissociated into a single cell suspension
5 and then activated with staph. aureus enterotoxin A,
6 which is a very powerful mitogen for human T cells,
7 for two days and then cultured in serum free media
8 containing IL-2 for an additional five to seven
9 days.

10 And with the proper culture conditions,
11 we can in most cases get greater than 30-fold
12 expansion of the T cell numbers, and in some cases
13 close to 100-fold expansion over this short period
14 of time.

15 The patients are conditioned with
16 cyclophosphamide one day prior to receiving their T
17 cell infusion, and this is done as an out-patient
18 procedure. The patients do not receive concomitant
19 IL-2. This is based on our preclinical data in
20 mouse intracranial tumors where we found actually
21 IL-2 was detrimental to the trafficking and efficacy
22 of the T cells. So we just used the T cell infusion
23 alone.

24 So you can see now how vaccination fits
25 in as a single step in this chain of events.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, to concentrate a little bit more,
2 since this is about tumor vaccines, about the exact
3 method that we used to prepare the tumor samples, we
4 obtained fresh samples. They're transported under
5 sterile conditions to a dedicated tissue culture
6 facility, and then necrotic debris and blood clots
7 are removed, and the tumor tissue is minced.

8 And this is a very important point,
9 especially for the malignant gliomas we worked with.
10 One of the pathologic hallmarks of glioblast
11 homomultiformi (phonetic) is that there's necrosis
12 and vascular proliferation.

13 So these tumor samples tend to be very
14 bloody, and there's quite a bit of necrosis and
15 debris, and you'll see that in some of the slides
16 coming up in a minute.

17 And then a single cell suspension is
18 prepared by digestion with a mixture of these
19 enzymes, collagenase, hyaluronidase, and DNAase, and
20 then the cells are filtered and washed twice.

21 Now, this washing step gets rid of some
22 of the soluble debris that's present in the culture,
23 but quite a bit of necrotic debris does pellet with
24 the cells.

S A G CORP.

1 Some of these cells are frozen away
2 immediately after the tumor digests, but the
3 majority are cultured. They're added to fibronectin
4 coated flasks, and then cultured in this mixture of
5 DMEM, ex vivo, 15, which is a serum free media, and
6 then five percent AB serum.

7 The glioma cultures are also
8 supplemented with this G-5 which contains some
9 selenium transferrin and hydrocortisone and a little
10 additional hydrocortisone, and then we're able to
11 fairly reliably in about 80 percent plus of the
12 cases establish short-term cultures of tumor cells.

13 And just to address the issue of whether
14 there's long-term selection of different phenotypes,
15 what we do is just use short-term cultured cells.
16 So presumably there's not been a lot of selection
17 that occurs during this short period of time.

18 Prior to vaccination, again, the cells
19 are given a single dose of radiation immediately
20 prior to their use. So that's how we prepare the
21 cells.

22 And what I'd like to do is just show you
23 some examples of short-term cultured cells, and many
24 of you in the audience have probably worked with
25 renal cell carcinoma. So this is a patient with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 renal cell carcinoma, just to give you kind of a
2 perspective that you're familiar with, and this is
3 the original single cell digest.

4 And what you can see is there are
5 adherent cells here that have flattened out in this
6 fibronectin coated flask, but there's also some
7 debris in here, and there's some red cell
8 contamination.

9 Now, two days later we just rinse off
10 the loosely adherent and nonadherent cells, and what
11 you're left with is a lawn of cells, and in here
12 many of the cells are flattened out, but there are
13 still quite a few that are very loosely attached to
14 the fibronectin coated plate.

15 These are probably dead cells that are
16 just stuck onto the plate. After one passage
17 though, what you see is that many of these cells now
18 have flattened out, and so it's a much cleaner
19 preparation.

20 And this is just another example of a
21 renal cell carcinoma sample where you can see in the
22 original digest there's in this sample quite a bit
23 of red cell contamination and not so many dead
24 cells, but then quickly the cells establish a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 monolayer flattened out, and it gets rid of a lot of
2 the necrotic debris.

3 Now, this really became much more of an
4 issue when we started working with glioma samples
5 because what you can see here is in the original
6 single cell digest, you can't even see the cells
7 that are attached to the plate. There's quite a bit
8 of red cell contamination. There's also a thick
9 film of necrotic debris that just rests on top of
10 the cells.

11 Now, a lot of this can be rinsed away,
12 but a lot of the residual cells are still probably
13 dead in this original mixture. After passing the
14 cells, you end up with a much healthier looking
15 culture.

16 Here's another example showing pretty
17 much the same thing, where there's quite a bit of
18 debris in the original digest. It cleans up, but in
19 this case many cells are probably dead, and when we
20 look at Trypan blue exclusion in the original tumor
21 digest, in many cases greater than 50 percent, some
22 cases greater than 70 percent of the cells,
23 especially for these glioma tumor digest, are Trypan
24 blue positive.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So we don't really care to immunize
2 patients with a mixture of mostly dead material.

3 The other consideration for brain tumors
4 is one way to induce EAE in animal models is to just
5 smash up a spinal cord and inject all of the myelin.
6 So by cleaning out all of this debris, presumably
7 we're getting rid of a lot of things that could
8 potentially be autoantigens and detrimental even.

9 So this is what the culture, again,
10 looks like after one passage, and just to give you
11 another example, a similar type of phenomenon.
12 These cells tend to pile up in many cases and form
13 foci, and then just another example, and in this
14 case a lot of the initial cells are dead, are fairly
15 scattered live cells, but they quickly form colonies
16 and quickly proliferate.

17 So one thing I think that's maybe
18 evident from some of the cultures you've seen, this
19 just looks at four different cultured glioma lines,
20 and then on the next slide, four additional glioma
21 tumor lines, and I think you have an appreciation
22 here. There is quite a bit of variation in the
23 morphology of these cultures.

24 And we spent a lot of time looking at
25 these cells under the microscope, and when we were

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 establishing the conditions for growing these cells,
2 we were really impressed with the variation in the
3 morphology, and kind of at a subconscious level for
4 us, it kind of reminds us that there's probably
5 quite a bit of heterogeneity in antigens in these
6 different tumor cultures as well as the variations
7 in the morphology.

8 So since this is a workshop, what I
9 thought I would do is just touch on a couple of the
10 points that I think are important.

11 First of all, what would be necessary
12 qualities of an autologous tumor cell vaccine?
13 Well, of course, we want sterility in terms of gram
14 fungal in cultures, endotoxin negative.

15 Another thing that I think is quite
16 important is that we have intact cell membranes. In
17 animal models it's quite clear that if you break the
18 cell membrane and inject that and try and use that
19 to generate vaccine draining lymph nodes, that it
20 doesn't work very well.

21 So it's important really to have Trypan
22 blue excluding cells, viable, healthy cells in the
23 vaccination mixture, and when we harvest these cells
24 from tissue culture flasks, routinely they're 85, 90
25 percent-plus Trypan blue excluding cells. So they

S A G CORP.

1 seem to be in a bit healthier state compared to the
2 original tumor digest.

3 The third point that's important is that
4 they should have an inability to form tumor, and we
5 use irradiation to prevent these cells from growing.

6 We followed many of these patients out
7 now past a year after their vaccination, and we've
8 seen no evidence that there's any tumor growth at
9 the vaccination site. So whether the irradiation
10 kills every last single cell or whether just the
11 injection site intradermally is a poor substrate for
12 these tumors to grow.

13 We have not seen any problems with
14 tumors due to the vaccination procedure, and then,
15 of course, the certificate of analysis for all of
16 the reagents used in the tissue culture.

17 Now, these are necessary qualities.
18 When I was thinking about what would be ideal, in an
19 ideal world what would be desired properties of an
20 autologous tumor vaccine, it would be very nice if
21 we could have some way to document the tumor
22 phenotype of cells that we grow out in short-term
23 culture.

24 Now, this is, I say, in an ideal world
25 because practically speaking, as you've seen, I

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 think, from the slides I've showed you, we can't
2 really use morphology as the criteria because the
3 morphology is highly variable. Some types of tumors
4 contain cell surface markers which are convenient to
5 use.

6 We've tried looking at GFAP in our brain
7 tumor models. That's not routinely expressed.
8 We've looked at telomerase (phonetic). We see it in
9 many cases, but, again, it's not uniformly
10 expressed.

11 So this is a bit of a conundrum for us
12 because in many tumors there doesn't seem to be a
13 uniformly expressed marker that's easily tested at
14 the time that you give the vaccine.

15 Another approach would be genomic,
16 genotypic characterization and identity with the
17 original tumor specimen. Many tumors contain
18 genetic abnormalities and perhaps through a use of
19 comparative genomic hybridization or spectral
20 karyotyping, some of these newer genetic approaches,
21 it would be possible to document that the tumor
22 cells that are used for the vaccine are identical to
23 the tumor cells that are removed from the patient.

24 The technology here, I don't know if
25 it's developed to a point where it can be routinely

S A G CORP.

1 used in an easy manner by a number of laboratories.
2 So I think this is something that may have to wait
3 until the technology develops and is a little bit
4 more accessible.

5 And this last point, again, is a bit of
6 a conundrum for us because, of course, you'd like to
7 have some type of functional test that what you're
8 injecting into the patient is immunogenic. The
9 problem is that these are unique vaccines for each
10 patient, and when we test these patients before
11 they're treated, we really don't see any T cell
12 immune response. So how can you test something
13 that's nonexistent before you administer the
14 vaccine?

15 We have plenty of post hoc evidence that
16 the cells we get from the lymph node respond to
17 autologous tumor by production of gamma interferon
18 and other types of measures, but again, prior to the
19 procedure vaccination, it's very difficult to do a
20 functional test on each individual patient.

21 So these are some things that, you know,
22 in an ideal world it would be nice to have, but
23 we're sort of limited in our ability to satisfy all
24 of those potential requirements.

S A G CORP.

1 So in conclusion, what I'd like to say
2 is that short-term cultures of autologous tumor
3 cells can be established for most patients, and
4 we've been more than 80 percent successful in
5 patients with malignant gliomas and renal cell
6 carcinoma.

7 This is a big advantage. The cultured
8 tumor cells are free of debris, and they're also
9 free of accessory cells. I didn't show in the
10 slide, but we've tested some of them, tumor digest,
11 and for renal cell carcinoma, many times there's
12 greater than ten percent CD-14 positive cells in the
13 original tumor digest. There's a number of CD-31
14 positive endothelial cells in the original tumor
15 digest, and when we test the cultured cells, these
16 disappear.

17 So it helps to get rid of these
18 accessory cells, and this can be done during short-
19 term culture.

20 And then the procedure of vaccination
21 with irradiated culture tumor cells is associated
22 with minimal toxicity. We've treated close to 60
23 patients now, and really there's minimal toxicity at
24 the vaccine site.

S A G CORP.

1 And what we observe is that there
2 hypertrophy of vaccine draining lymph nodes, and
3 we've tested -- we haven't tested every patient, but
4 when we've tested, we see that there is reactivity
5 against autologous tumor from T cells in these
6 draining lymph nodes. So that's one immunologic
7 measure that there is some response.

8 And then we've also, in our Phase I
9 trials, seen some clinical responses in patients.
10 So, again, this is a harder piece of evidence that
11 patients treated with ex vivo activated lymph node
12 T cells, that these culture tumor cells are
13 sufficient immunogen.

14 So I'd stop there and thank you.

15 (Applause.)

16 DR. FOX: Thank you, Greg.

17 I'd like to now call on Dr. Ernie
18 Yankee, who will give our next presentation. Ernie
19 Yankee is the Executive VP of AVAX, and before that
20 he was at Upjohn, and he has responsibility for all
21 of the R&D and regulatory affairs at AVAX.

22 DR. YANKEE: Dr. Noguchi, Dr. Fox, on
23 behalf of AVAX Technologies, I want to thank Dr.
24 Puri and the other members of the organizing
25 committee for the opportunity to present.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 This meeting is very timely and
2 especially important not only because of the large
3 numbers of novel technology product INDs currently
4 at the FDA, but also the large number of companies
5 developing novel technology products.

6 Especially this meeting is important
7 because of the many thousands of patients who need
8 new therapies.

9 Successful development requires the
10 productive cooperation between science, industry,
11 and the regulatory authorities. However, as
12 evidenced by this workshop, novel technologies
13 challenge the existing regulatory framework.

14 I want to first discuss where the
15 existing regulatory framework can accommodate
16 characterization of our novel technology product,
17 but the bulk of my talk will be spent discussing the
18 challenges that novel technology products like ours
19 face in dealing with the historic framework, and of
20 course, I'm going to provide a proposal on how we
21 think we can deal with one of those challenges.

22 Next slide, please.

23 We view that in the area of emerging
24 technologies, we view FDA's role to be not only the
25 traditional insuring safety and efficacy and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 preventing fraud, but equally importantly, assuring
2 regulatory flexibility.

3 This provides a bit of a challenge to
4 the agency because they need to balance regulatory
5 flexibility with also providing clear and consistent
6 guidance.

7 This meeting also provides the
8 opportunity to aid in development of policy to avoid
9 podium policy and provide a level playing field for
10 all of us who are trying to develop these novel
11 products.

12 Next, please. Back, please.

13 Probably most of you know about these
14 guidelines, but I want to just review very briefly
15 the agency's criteria for premarket review for
16 cellular based products.

17 There are four key components of this:
18 more than minimum manipulation; combination with a
19 non-tissue component; used for a nonhomologous
20 function or used mostly for metabolic function.

21 The first two are probably most relevant
22 to my talk today, and we view the second one as a
23 combination with nontissue component, although not
24 explicit in the guidelines, as encompassing the

1 combined therapeutic administration with adjuvants
2 in other agents, in our case today BCG.

3 Next, please.

4 These are some examples of the
5 distinction made between minimal manipulation and
6 more than minimal manipulation. On the latter, more
7 than minimal manipulation for our purposes is most
8 important with regard to change in biological
9 characteristics of the product, and I've given some
10 examples of where this would be in the latter case.

11 Next, please.

12 Our product is a Hapten-modified tumor
13 vaccine. It's autologous, and it's intended for
14 patient centered therapy.

15 There is cell manipulation with a
16 potential change in biological characteristics
17 through the Haptenization procedure and through
18 irradiation.

19 It is combined with a noncellular
20 component, namely, Hapten modification and
21 administration with an adjuvant, BCG.

22 Next.

23 There are a number of challenges
24 inherent in the nature of our product. The shelf
25 life provides a limited window for product release

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 testing. Because it's an autologous system, for the
2 purposes of lot release it's an n of one.

3 The immune response which we want from
4 our product requires in vivo induction. The
5 correlation with any in vitro assays is obviously a
6 very serious challenge.

7 Finally, sterility can be a challenge if
8 the vaccine is manufactured from a likely non-
9 sterile tumor source.

10 Next, please.

11 Our experience leads us to believe that
12 central manufacturing is far superior to multiple
13 site manufacturing because of a number of
14 advantages. Centralized manufacturing provides
15 decreased variability both in manufacturing and in
16 validation, and it minimizes the need for
17 demonstrating bioequivalence for products prepared
18 at different sites.

19 Next.

20 In meeting the challenges of the
21 regulatory framework with this novel technology
22 product, we have gone a considerable ways. We
23 follow good tissue practices, for example, including
24 patient screening for communicable diseases.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 We have in process reagent solvent
2 removal with validation or established finished
3 product specification, and we've established the
4 nonproliferation of the tumor cells.

5 Next, please.

6 We've also demonstrated the efficiency
7 that Haptenization with appropriate process controls
8 or finished product characterization. We have
9 measures of cell viability and morphology both in
10 process and finished product specification. We have
11 an endotoxin assay, and we test each lot, and we
12 don't do a general safety test.

13 Next, please.

14 Sterility is tested on every lot and
15 results, of course, are reported after
16 administration because of the shelf life. This is
17 an example of where the agency has been very
18 flexible in trying to help work with an area like
19 this.

20 We have identity assay which we are
21 using, which is a combination of measurement of
22 expression of melanoma cell antigens, as well as
23 anti-Hapten antibody measurement.

24 Next, please.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 As you've seen, products such as ours
2 can meet the existing regulatory framework for
3 characterization. Nevertheless, challenges remain,
4 the largest of which is the potency assay.

5 Product specific potency assays are
6 required for lot release according to the
7 regulations, and the regulations define what potency
8 means, which I've indicated here.

9 I want to just point your attention to
10 the part that we have italicized from this:
11 appropriate laboratory tests, adequately controlled
12 clinical data.

13 Next, please.

14 Dr. Noguchi in a 1996 publication
15 reviewed this area and indicated that potency as a
16 measure of clinical usefulness was added over 50
17 years ago to the Public Health Service Act. The
18 implications for patient centered therapy are that
19 the extent of characterization should be consistent
20 with focus on potential clinical utility.

21 Next, please.

22 I've listed here the attributes that are
23 common with the potency assays, that is, for
24 traditional small molecules and biologics used to
25 characterize the product to monitor consistency, to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 assure stability. Results are available prior to
2 release. Close relationship to the putative
3 physiologic-pharmacologic activity of the product,
4 ability to elicit a dose response, and the ability
5 to validate the assay.

6 Potency may also be measured then in
7 animal model and/or functional assay performed in
8 vitro or in vivo.

9 Next, please.

10 There are two key conceptual challenges
11 for a product like ours in dealing with a potency
12 assay. First, an animal model is not an intuitive
13 option, and more to the point, it's simply not
14 available.

15 Secondly, and more to the point for what
16 we're going to be presenting later this morning, can
17 the ability of an autologous product to induce an
18 antitumor immune response in vivo be measured in
19 vitro?

20 We've spent a great deal of time
21 thinking about these problems, and we've invested a
22 fair amount of research trying to address them, and
23 I want to summarize in the next two slides sort of
24 where we are with what we have found in our
25 thinking.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Next, please.

2 Potency assays can be sort of
3 arbitrarily differentiated between preadministration
4 and post administration assays. Prior to
5 administration assays, for example, could be an
6 allogeneic T cell stimulation measuring as an
7 endpoint either cytokine release or cell
8 proliferation.

9 Clearly this has a big advantage because
10 it can be conducted prior to lot release of the
11 product. However, there are very serious
12 limitations to this.

13 The mechanistic relationship to the
14 activity of the product; it's very difficult to
15 validate for an autologous product. Hapten
16 modification has been shown to decrease the response
17 of an allogeneic assay with these endpoints, and the
18 question of whether this is related to clinical
19 efficacy is a very big question.

20 Finally, we get to the point of what is
21 the value added in even trying to conduct such
22 assays.

23 Next, please.

24 Post administration assays, two examples
25 are an autologous T cell stimulation after a round

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of immunization, taking cells from the patient.
2 This was published in 1995 with this vaccine.

3 The other one is a measurement of a DTH
4 response, again, after a round of immunization with
5 the vaccine, measuring DTH response to each of
6 modified and unmodified tumors cells.

7 The advantages to both of these are
8 there's a close mechanistic relationship to the
9 activity of the product, and there may be potential
10 for predicting or correlating at least with clinical
11 utility.

12 There are serious limitations, again,
13 here. Inherently these are post release, post
14 administration assays. In particular, DTH assay is
15 highly susceptible to false positives and, by the
16 way, false negatives.

17 And finally, the assessment of DTH
18 reaction is highly operator and technique dependent,
19 and what I don't have up here is all of these assays
20 put a great burden on the patient.

21 Next, please.

22 We want to propose what we think might
23 be a reasonable alternative to these, that is, that
24 the potency assay should be identity assay plus,
25 that is, the identity assay which I've described to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 you before for this product, plus, the plus meaning
2 in conjunction with cell viability.

3 This would insure relevant potency
4 measure prior to administration, and it would
5 correlate. Ultimately one would correlate this with
6 critical measure obtained in the Phase III studies.

7 There are precedents for this.
8 Traditional vaccines, for example, Varivax,
9 quantitate live virus via the plaque assay. Other
10 products such as Carticel, where cell count and
11 viability are used as the potency assay for release
12 purposes.

13 Finally, I want to summarize where we
14 are.

15 Next, please.

16 The vaccine that we are developing is a
17 novel autologous therapy. As such, the regulatory
18 framework to address this needs to be not only
19 scientifically rigorous, but both flexible and
20 creative.

21 Identity plus, as we have proposed,
22 meets the potency assay requirements of the
23 regulations. There are appropriate laboratory
24 tests, and there will be adequate clinical data, and
25 it's also consistent with precedence.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Thank you.

2 (Applause.)

3 DR. FOX: Thanks, Ernie. That's great.

4 Okay. Our next speaker is Dr. Jim Mule.

5 Jim is the Maude Tulane Professor of Surgery at the
6 University of Michigan, and he's been very actively
7 involved in adoptive immunotherapy strategies over
8 the last 20 years.

9 Jim.

10 DR. MULE: Thanks, Bernie.

11 I'd like to begin by thanking the
12 organizers for the meeting for the invitation to
13 share with you today some of our most recent
14 information on using tumor lysates as a way of
15 pulsing dendritic cells to serve as an immunogen
16 both preclinically as well as in some recently
17 initiated Phase I clinical trials.

18 If I could have the first slide, please.

19 Okay. The hypothesis for this work is
20 the fact that a potent DC, as you've heard yesterday
21 and early today, as antigen presenting cells may
22 uncover in cancer patients very low level activity
23 or T cell reactivity to poor or nonimmunogenic
24 tumors that are virtually undetectable by other
25 methodologies.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, why use tumor lysates? Again,
2 yesterday you heard the possibility of using fusion
3 of whole tumor cells by Don Kufe, as well as the
4 possibility of using apoptotic tumor cells as a way
5 of presenting antigens via dendritic cells.

6 And whether or not lysates are as
7 efficient as peptides or these other methods is
8 something that I think we really need to pay
9 considerable attention to and design appropriate
10 preclinical studies comparing the different ways of
11 manipulating dendritic cells with these different
12 sources of tumor antigen.

13 But for the purpose of the talk today,
14 I'm going to share with you the reasons why I
15 believe lysates have certain advantages, and of
16 course, if someone were to give a talk with defined
17 peptides, I'm sure that the advantages would be
18 clear in those cases, as well.

19 But nevertheless, from our perspective
20 using tumor lysates allows a greater potential for
21 augmenting a broader T cell response, given the fact
22 that presumably tumors express multiple tumor
23 associated antigens on the cell surface.

24 By doing this, the possibility is to
25 lessen the potential for tumor escape from immune

S A G CORP.

1 recognition. I think some of the recent peptide
2 studies clear that immunity can escape, can be
3 overcome by antigen modulation on tumor cells.

4 A greater potential to trigger T cell
5 reactivity to tumor rejection antigens, obviously to
6 date there's been a number of peptides molecularly
7 cloned, particularly in melanoma, and more
8 information it's now becoming clear from the
9 clinical trials that give us an indication of
10 whether or not any of those peptides are defined as
11 classic tumor rejection antigens.

12 And then lastly, the fact that lysates
13 may allow you -- and you'll see from some of our
14 work in the mouse -- allow one to generate a greater
15 potential for presentation of both helper and CTL
16 defined epitopes.

17 Now, from a practical standpoint, the
18 use of lysates allow the following advantages. One
19 is that one can use crude lysates, and it becomes an
20 issue of how one defines these tumor lysates, which
21 we can talk a bit more during the panel discussion
22 perhaps.

23 But nevertheless, it allows us to
24 circumvent the need for viable fresh tumor cells

S A G CORP.

1 since we use crude lysates of freeze-thawed three
2 cycles and use that to pulse dendritic cells.

3 Obviously it avoids the necessity of
4 molecular characterization of tumor antigens. That
5 becomes a critical issue when one recognizes the
6 limitations to date in trying to identify tumor
7 peptides associated on histologically distinct human
8 tumors that are distinct from melanoma, as an
9 example.

10 And then lastly, it's becoming more
11 clear that CD-4 responses are playing a significant
12 role in the antitumor response generated, and that
13 one very much needs to take into account the
14 necessity for help in any of these vaccine
15 strategies.

16 We showed years ago in this mouse model
17 that one could readily take a sarcoma 207 and post
18 the lysate onto dendritic cells and in vitro bring
19 out a specific proliferative CD-4 response and in a
20 crisscross experiment in parallel using a variety of
21 different tumors, such as a colon cancer or the
22 Lewis lung cancer, essentially one could show
23 exquisite specificity of the proliferative response
24 of CD-4 cells when one uses crude lysates post onto
25 DC.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 We then moved on to using bone marrow
2 derived dendritic cells for the remaining murine
3 studies that I'll discuss. This shows the classic
4 slides of dendritic cells generated in GM-CSF plus
5 IL-4 using whole bone marrow from mice.

6 And clearly these cells, as you've heard
7 yesterday from Ralph Steinman and Jacques
8 Banchereau, are very potent in their ability to
9 stimulate primary aloe responses. This is one
10 example in which Metrizamide separated dendritic
11 cells from the marrow could trigger very powerful
12 MLR compared to the pellet from the Metrizamide
13 gradient, and in every indication that we have in
14 these assays, the proliferative potential induced by
15 dendritic cells surpasses manyfold what one can
16 achieve with the optimum amount of CON A (phonetic)
17 stimulating those T cells in culture.

18 This just shows a battery of antibodies
19 that one can use to show we have dendritic cells.
20 They're high class 286, 80, 40 CD-11C, but do not
21 express B-220, and this is the pellet from that
22 gradient.

23 We showed in a paper that was published
24 some months ago that in vitro one could educate CTL
25 by taking naive spleen T cells, incubating or

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 stimulating those T cells with lysate pulsed
2 dendritic cells in the presence of low dose IL-2
3 plus IL-7, and one can show specific induction of
4 CTL by using lysates against the 207 tumor, but not
5 an irrelevant sarcoma 102.

6 We then showed that this response was
7 Class I restricted by using the appropriate
8 haplotype specific Class I antibodies. We could
9 essentially eliminate that CTL activity.

10 And also, the CTL could generate in a
11 specific way when triggered in vitro by the
12 appropriate lysate post DC GM-CSF production
13 compared to controls.

14 So we were, in fact, able to generate in
15 vitro specifically reactive T cells by using a
16 lysate. Now, obviously one needs to show in in vivo
17 models that what we have will impact to some degree
18 on tumor, and what we then did was to move on to in
19 vivo experiments.

20 Here is one example within a syngeneic
21 MT-901 breast tumor in which we immunized mice with
22 lysate pulsed DC and then rechallenged those animals
23 with large amounts of friable tumor cells. All
24 animals were protected as one would expect compared
25 to the control groups.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 We then went on to show, using an early
2 established model of pulmonary metastases. In this
3 case, these data are with an MCA-207 sarcoma, but
4 we've also done this with the mammary tumor as well,
5 that the use of tumor pulse lysate DCs administered
6 subcutaneously to mice that had three-day micro
7 metastatic disease in the lung could substantially
8 reduce the number of metastases.

9 This shows the number in the lungs
10 versus the treatment groups, and more importantly,
11 we showed that if one were to deplete the animals
12 selective at CD-4 cells or CD-8 cells, that that
13 impacted significantly on the ability of this
14 immunization procedure to cause regression of these
15 micro metastatic nodules.

16 So clearly the effect was mediated by T
17 cells. It was mediated predominantly by CD-8 cells
18 and CD-4 played a participatory role as well.

19 We've moved on to a Phase I clinical
20 trial based on those preclinical animal studies, and
21 we're in the midst of the Phase I trial. This
22 cartoon shows the approach.

23 We take fresh tumor, prepare a lysate
24 ahead of time. It's characterized by sterility and
25 so forth, and then the patients are leukophoresed

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 for four hours and dendritic cells are generated in
2 the standard way from monocytes using GM-CSF plus
3 IL-4.

4 We pulsed the lysates overnight, and
5 then the patient receives interdermal injections of
6 this pulsed dendritic cell over time, and we then
7 monitor the peripheral blood for response.

8 This gives a little bit more specifics
9 about the trial. It's a dose escalation Phase I in
10 which half the number of dendritic cells are pulsed
11 with KLH. Half are pulsed with the tumor lysate.
12 They're mixed and injected. The lowest dose is one
13 million cells.

14 We're now in the midst of the ten to the
15 seventh dose of this escalation, and were approved
16 in a separate cohort of six patients once we reached
17 the highest dose level to evaluate the capacity of
18 tumor pulsed DC to sensitize draining of lymph node
19 T cells.

20 As I said, in the patients we're now
21 very early in the analysis, but I'll show some
22 preliminary data. We have used LDA looking at
23 proliferative T cells, and if one does pre versus
24 post PBMC looking for a response to tetanus in these
25 patients, as you would expect, there's no difference

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 pre versus post in the frequency of T cells in the
2 periphery of these patients.

3 However, after immunization with KLH,
4 we're now able to show in all patients that the ten
5 to the seventh dose so far with this LDA assay, a
6 skewing or biasing or the frequency is shown here,
7 which in most cases represent a frequency similar to
8 what the patient is showing with tetanus toxoid.

9 And we skin test the patient one month
10 after the last immunization. Before we skin test,
11 we take a two-hour leukophoresis for the immune
12 assays.

13 This shows the patient that was skin
14 tested post immunization at one microgram, ten
15 micrograms, and 100 micrograms of KLH, comparing
16 that DTH response with tetanus toxoid in this
17 patient.

18 In a patient, the first patient at the
19 ten to the seventh dose, we've seen a partial
20 response of melanoma in this periodic (phonetic)
21 lymph node. We've now gone on to retreat this
22 patient with a second cycle of immunizations at the
23 ten to the seventh dose.

24 The patient has now received the second
25 immunization of the second cycle.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, we're also interested in where we
2 go once the Phase I is completed. So what I'm going
3 to share with you now are some new data that will be
4 appearing in the PNAS in the next month or so in
5 which we, based on the fact of the data that were
6 shown to you that T cells play an important role in
7 the antitumor effect mediated by lysate pulsed DC
8 immunizations, it was clear to us that IL-2 may be a
9 cytokine of value in augmenting the T cell response.

10 So what we did was to use IL-2 doses in
11 the mouse that were 25 to 50-fold below the MTD, and
12 if one extrapolates to humans considering the MTD in
13 patients, this dose, perhaps with a number of
14 caveats, would represent doses that one would call T
15 cell reconstituting doses based on the studies of
16 Calogary (phonetic), for instance, in HIV and Alex
17 Pfeffer (phonetic) with patients undergoing
18 pulmonary transplant.

19 But what you see here are treatment of
20 pulmonary metastases that were established at three
21 days versus those in which immunizations are
22 delivered at day seven. One grossly visible tumor
23 is seen on the surface of the lungs.

24 In this case, tumor lysate pulsed DC
25 alone have a small effect. However, as we published

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 earlier, on three-day micro metastatic disease, the
2 effect is quite considerable.

3 However, IL-2 at low dose administered
4 in a three-day cycle after each immunization gives
5 you a significant antitumor effect over that
6 achieved by tumor pulsed DC alone, which is more
7 significantly seen when one goes to a more
8 established tumor model.

9 It was interesting to us that animals
10 that were actually cured of disease at seven days --
11 we followed these animals out for at least 100 days
12 -- if we took spleen cells from those animals at
13 about two weeks after tumor -- we believe tumor was
14 cleared from the lungs of those animals, we were
15 able to show in vitro that those T cells could
16 selectively secrete gamma interferon in this
17 particular experiment on the level of 250 units,
18 with low level of activity against the controls.

19 Given that information, we went to a B-
20 16 melanoma model, and this tumor is a subline of B-
21 16 melanoma denoted D-5, which has very low level
22 Class I expression, no evidence of Class II
23 expression, and other antibodies are used here.

24 But as was published by Manson Seay
25 (phonetic) at Harvard and a number of other

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 investigators, CD-44 is a marker for metastatic
2 potential of these cells. These are highly
3 aggressive, highly metastatic. This is a highly
4 metastatic subline of the B-16 tumor, and again,
5 it's low in Class I.

6 When we incubate in culture, not
7 surprisingly this line with 200 to 300 units of
8 gamma interferon, we can up regulate Class I, and
9 again, those are the levels that we've detected in T
10 cells in vitro that are incubated with lysate pulsed
11 DCs to trigger those cells to produce gamma
12 interferon in animals that are treated with lysates
13 plus IL-2.

14 We can treat B-16 D-5 in a three-day
15 model. We're now moving on to more established
16 models by combining tumor pulsed lysates, tumor
17 lysates pulsed to DC, combining that with IL-2, and
18 here is an experiment in which IL-2 alone has very
19 little effect; lysate plus IL-2, no effect. The
20 controls, the other controls are shown.

21 Lysate plus IL-2 at three immunizations
22 will impact to some extent. It's not great, but you
23 can see here a significant antitumor effect when one
24 combines the lysate pulsed DC with low dose IL-2
25 administration.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So we're now in the midst of submitting
2 to the IRB a clinical protocol which will allow us
3 to combine IL-2 with DC based immunizations.

4 I'd like to finish by telling you
5 another strategy that we're involved with and have
6 IRB approval to go ahead with, and that is to
7 combine DC immunizations in the Pulmonary Transplant
8 Center.

9 We have a dedicated facility in our 16-
10 bed clinical research center at Michigan, a
11 dedicated facility that allows us to perform
12 leukophoreses. We also have a dedicated set-up for
13 CD-34 stem cell isolations. This is the Baxter 300I
14 separation device.

15 We've completed a number of studies in
16 the transplant unit of giving -- successfully
17 reconstituting patients with selected CD-34 cells
18 off the column, and given that information, you've
19 heard from Jacques Banchereau, as well as Ralph
20 Steinman, yesterday the potential of generating
21 dendritic cells from CD-34 cells.

22 All the data I've provided so far were
23 with the monocyte derived dendritic cells, and we're
24 now pursuing comparisons between negative fractions
25 off the CD-34 column, comparing the activity of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 dendritic cells generated by this negative fraction
2 compared to the highly purified fraction off the
3 clinical column, and these will be done by in vitro
4 assays.

5 Another important aspect of this work is
6 that from a single leukaphoresis collect or pool
7 collects, depending on the number of cells that are
8 needed for the transplant, one can obtain both a
9 negative fraction to generate large numbers of
10 dendritic cells for immunization post transplant, as
11 well as having grafting dose of purified or highly
12 enriched CD-34 cells for the transplant.

13 And this shows a trial that we've
14 started not with tumor lysate pulsed dendritic
15 cells, but using KLH as a marked antigen pulsed onto
16 dendritic cells in which we're immunizing non-
17 Hodgkin's lymphoma patients, intermediate grade,
18 with dendritic cells pulsed with KLH, starting at
19 lymphocyte counts of 500 post transplant, and
20 comparing that to patients being immunized with KLH
21 alone, and that will be an immunologic pilot study
22 to determine whether or not we can bias or educate
23 the developing response early on post transplant.

24 So I'll stop here and thank my many
25 collaborators within the Department of Surgery, the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 bone marrow transplant group within the Department
2 of Internal Medicine, Paul Watkins who's the
3 Director of our GC-RC and Sandy Hoffman in the Blood
4 Bank.

5 Thank you for your attention.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. NOGUCHI: Now, yesterday Dr. Zoon
8 said that when she started at the FDA tumor vaccines
9 had been around for a while. Well, I've been at the
10 FDA maybe ten years longer, and that statement was
11 true for me as well.

12 And perhaps even longer than that, Dr.
13 Morton is really one of the pioneers in this whole
14 field, and we're very pleased to have him here today
15 because I think Don has been able to not only
16 initiate and start this very exciting field, but has
17 been able to move and to evolve with new
18 technologies.

19 So Dr. Morton.

20 DR. MORTON: Thank you, Phil.

21 You know the definition of "pioneer" is
22 somebody who's lost in the wilderness.

23 (Laughter.)

24 DR. MORTON: But it is really very
25 exciting for me to be here and to see 500 people at

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 a meeting on tumor vaccines. Even a decade ago when
2 you got up to talk at the medical oncology meetings,
3 why, all of a sudden everybody would go to the
4 exhibits, and --

5 (Laughter.)

6 DR. MORTON: -- and it's just amazing.

7 I really want to tell you that I know
8 this is an important field today because if you go
9 through the attendance list and see all of the
10 attorneys in the audience, you know that --

11 (Laughter.)

12 DR. MORTON: -- tumor vaccines have
13 arrived.

14 Now, this is, I have to say, very
15 nostalgic for me because in this very building 30
16 years ago, we began our first experiments with
17 autologous vaccines, and it's been a long, long
18 time, but we're very excited that the FDA and the
19 NCI have put this conference together. Dr. Raj
20 Puri, thank you for inviting me.

21 So I'd like to just review some of the
22 conceptual. These studies that go back to the '60s
23 we asked the question: in asyngeneic animal models,
24 first in mice and then guinea pigs, what's the most

S A G CORP.

1 efficient way to immunize against the already
2 implanted and growing tumor?

3 And we looked at a number of things, but
4 we found irradiated tumor cells mixed with
5 microbacterial adjuvants were the most effective
6 immunogen, and these had to be living tumor cells.
7 Dead cells or cell lysates or purified antigens in
8 this model didn't work.

9 So we went, after failing with
10 autologous vaccines, we asked ourselves: well,
11 could we use allogeneic vaccines grown in tissue
12 culture?

13 And from '71 to '84, we tested three
14 different combinations of randomly selected melanoma
15 cells based upon their ability to grow in culture,
16 mixed with BCG, and we saw no clinical responses,
17 and when given in the adjuvant setting, no overall
18 survival effect.

19 And we were really about ready to give
20 up this approach when one of our postdocs. working
21 in Dr. Rako Erie's lab found that the patients that
22 formed IgM antibodies exhibited prolonged survival,
23 and the problem was only one-third of the immunized
24 patients developed such a response, but those that
25 did had a 90 percent five-year survival.

S A G CORP.

1 So for the T cell chauvinists in the
2 room, I want to say but before T cells there were
3 antibodies, and --

4 (Laughter.)

5 DR. MORTON: -- and to say that tumor
6 antigens were discovered with T cells is not quite
7 correct. In fact, the work in our laboratory by Dr.
8 Rako Erie suggests that both T cells and antibodies
9 can recognize the same antigen, in fact, the same
10 decapeptide. And so let's not ignore antibodies.

11 Now, after these failures, we said,
12 well, we've got to go back and reengineer our
13 vaccine, but by this time we had identified in our
14 laboratory six antigens that were immunogenic in man
15 and induced an immune response, an antibody
16 response.

17 And so we went back and selected from
18 our 150 melanoma cell lines three that had high
19 concentrations of these six antigens, which then
20 were pooled, cyropreserved, irradiated, go through
21 quality assurance and quality control, and then we
22 used as a vaccine.

23 This vaccine has multiple antigens. All
24 of the ganglioside antigens, the myelinogenesis
25 antigens, and a whole host of protein antigens, and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 we've shown that we make antibody responses, in
2 fact, to all of these antigens.

3 Now, the importance of a polyvalent
4 vaccine is shown by this experiment of nature that
5 Bob Goode used to talk about. This is a patient
6 with no metastasis in which I did a groin
7 dissection, and here you see a clone of melanocytic
8 cells.

9 Here you see an amelanotic clone in a
10 different lymph node, and here in the same lymph
11 node you see melanotic, amelanotic, and a gray. You
12 can see phenotypically the heterogeneity that exists
13 in all cancer, and therefore, we have to have a
14 induction of a polyvalent response.

15 So because it's more difficult for tumor
16 cells to modulate or delete multiple antigens
17 simultaneously, even though they are genetically
18 unstable, and the induction of cytotoxic antibody is
19 very important because it's not susceptible to HLA
20 modulation by which to escape the CTL.

21 Now, in looking at the regulatory aspect
22 of this, the fact is the cancer vaccines have no
23 direct cytotoxic effect on tumor cells. It is not
24 like a drug. So you give the vaccine to a patient.
25 They haven't had the effective therapy until they

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 induce an immune response to antigens shared by the
2 vaccine and tumor target cells.

3 And this is some examples of our
4 vaccine. This is antibodies to MAGE-1 that Dr. Dave
5 Hoon's laboratory -- and here you can see two out of
6 the three patients respond.

7 The purpose of this is to emphasize that
8 there's heterogeneity not only in the tumor, but in
9 the outbred human population that you're immunizing.
10 So one patient will respond to an antigen; another
11 one will not.

12 And here's another response, an IgM
13 antibody to TA-90, which is a very important antigen
14 is cancer.

15 Now, of course, it's necessary to induce
16 reactivity with the allogeneic vaccine that cross-
17 reacts with the autologous tumor, and this is
18 lymphocytes co-cultivated with tumor cells and a
19 mixed tumor-lymphocyte reaction at baseline versus
20 16 weeks later.

21 As you can see, we get stimulation. It
22 varies from patient to patient, but we get enhanced
23 thymidine incorporation stimulation with the
24 autologous tumor.

S A G CORP.

1 Dave Byrd has emphasized he lymphocytic
2 infiltrate into tumors. Metastatic tumors typically
3 don't have T cell infiltrates. Here you can see a
4 patient with a pulmonary nodule that after
5 vaccination stood stable for 12 months, and finally
6 I got tired of watching it and took it out, and this
7 is what it looked like.

8 You can see you hardly see tumor cells
9 there with the T cell infiltrate.

10 We also in fortunately few patients
11 induce melanoma associated hypopigmentation, that
12 this occurred about two months after the patient was
13 immunized.

14 So to understand how vaccines work, the
15 immune response adduced must be studied. The
16 vaccines can only work in individuals who mount an
17 immune response. Knowledge of what constitutes an
18 effective antitumor immune response then will guide
19 selection of QC assays.

20 And this is the development plan that we
21 developed for our vaccine, Cancer VAX, which we
22 abbreviate in the slide C-VAX.

23 First, we test it in Phase I-II trials
24 looking for clinical activity. We think that the
25 rule that you have to show some evidence that the

S A G CORP.

1 tumor goes away is a good one, and then once --
2 because we're not really just here to induce immune
3 responses. We're here to induce immune responses
4 that work.

5 And then we determine which of these
6 immune responses to which antigens correlate with
7 the clinical activity and develop lot release assays
8 based on these antigens, produce lots of vaccine
9 based on these lot release assays, and then test
10 these in Phase II trials for their consistency in
11 inducing immune response to important tumor
12 antigens.

13 And only after we had done that that we
14 saw it was time to begin Phase III trial.

15 Well, does this vaccine work? In people
16 with in transit melanoma -- and this was a
17 specifically selected model. As Dr. Keegan said
18 yesterday, the problem is it's asking a lot to
19 expect a vaccine, the host immune response, to take
20 care of a pound of tumor, but people with in transit
21 disease, you can detect small amounts of tumor, and
22 in 54 patients we've immunized, we got 13 complete
23 regressions. Four of those are still in complete
24 regression 22 to 105 months later. There's been no
25 relapse in the CR sites.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, people say, well, melanoma
2 spontaneously regressed. Well, I can tell you I
3 have treated over 8,000 melanoma patients in my
4 career, and I've seen two spontaneous regressions.
5 So the incidence is very, very rare.

6 The other thing we have done is looked
7 at giving this a post surgical adjuvant, the other
8 model that Dr. Keegan mentioned, and we have highly
9 significant prolongation.

10 Now, in addition to the heterogeneity in
11 the patients and their ability to respond and the
12 heterogeneity in the tumors in terms of their
13 expression of antigens, we have the heterogeneity in
14 the tumor burden in the patient.

15 And if we look at the level of
16 metastatic disease, whether it's low or high, and
17 the level of antitumor immune response, whether it's
18 low or high, you can see that if you have a high
19 level of metastatic disease and a low immune
20 response, you don't do well. If you have a low
21 level of metastatic disease and high antitumor
22 immune response, you do very well.

23 So there's this other factor that's
24 going on that has to be taken into consideration.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, here's a patient with multiple in
2 transit disease, the failure of radiation therapy
3 and surgery. These are hypothermia burns. Four
4 months later lesions begin to fade, and four years
5 later this patient is still in complete remission,
6 almost nine years now.

7 We see responses occasionally in
8 visceral metastasis. As you know, it takes a
9 certain size tumor to be detected. This is a two
10 and a half centimeter liver metastasis. This is
11 five months later. This patient is still in
12 complete remission almost five years.

13 Now, going to Stage IV disease, in our
14 institution there's been absolutely no progress in
15 the treatment of Stage IV melanoma over the last 25
16 years. As you see, the median survival has stayed
17 the same.

18 However, in those patients that one can
19 resect a distant metastasis, we do have, in fact, a
20 median survival of 17 months and a 15 percent five-
21 year survival.

22 But in 150 patients that we resected
23 their distant metastasis and then gave them this
24 vaccine, we have a 39 percent median and 42 percent
25 five-year survival. I was shocked when our

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 statisticians analyzed the data because, you know,
2 as you're taking care of these patients on a daily
3 basis, you remember your failures more than your
4 successes, but this is extraordinary.

5 Now, our statistician said, "Well, you
6 are selecting the patients. You know which one's
7 going to do well. So, therefore, you select those."

8 So they did a matched pair analysis
9 where they took the important prognostic factors for
10 Stage IV melanoma and then matched them with the
11 vaccine patients by gender, site of metastasis, and
12 number of involved organ sites, and again, the data,
13 median survival 36 months, five-year survival 40
14 percent, and the control.

15 So it's very clear that there was no
16 selection going on here, as best we can tell,
17 without proving this in a randomized trial.

18 Now, we asked the question: what are
19 the immune responses in this population that are
20 important for a clinical effectiveness? And we have
21 looked at 77 of these patients and then to correlate
22 the specific immune response in patients receiving
23 this vaccine.

24 The antibody we're measuring is TA-90,
25 as shown here, glycoprotein. It's present in 72

S A G CORP.

1 percent or more of melanomas. It's autoimmunogenic,
2 and we get IgG and IgM antibody responses to it.

3 Now, in order to say that the immune
4 response to a particular tumor is specific, you need
5 to have a control antigen, and since we immunize
6 with BCG as part of an adjuvant, we have the BCG as
7 the control adjuvant, and we then measure antibodies
8 to PPD as a control and DTH to PPD as well as to the
9 vaccine.

10 Well, the correlations are really
11 remarkable. If you have both an IgM response and a
12 DTH response, in these people with resected Stage IV
13 melanoma, 76 percent median, 75 percent five-year
14 survival.

15 If you have one or the other, 32 months,
16 36 percent, and if you have no response, 19 months
17 eight percent, this is really equivalent to the
18 group of patients that had no vaccine, just surgical
19 treatment alone.

20 And by multivariate analysis, the PPD
21 response, either antibody or DTH, has no correlation
22 with clinical course, but the specific antibody
23 response both by univariate and multivariate
24 analysis is when all of the prognostic factors taken
25 care of is very significant.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, we have also looked at other
2 antigens. GM-2, and again, we see those that make
3 high levels of antibody to GM-2 do better than those
4 that don't.

5 We make antibodies to GD-3, the same
6 thing. Both of the gangliosides, as well as GD-2,
7 seems to be important.

8 So going back on our development plan,
9 we have gotten to this point, and then we need to
10 develop lot release assays based upon this
11 information.

12 So theoretically the quality control
13 tests assure lot consistency, should reflect those
14 characteristics which correlate with the
15 effectiveness of that particular vaccine, and what
16 those tests are are going to be different for
17 different vaccines depending upon their nature.

18 Now, for our vaccine, we know antibody
19 responses to Ta-90, to the ganglioside antigens. We
20 have shown the skin test responses. We've shown
21 that MLTR correlates with DTH, and we've shown the
22 induction of cytotoxic T cells to allogeneic
23 haplotype matched and autologous tumors correlate
24 with clinical course.

S A G CORP.

1 So we then have selected the following
2 for quality control. Viability, and these are the
3 publications that describe the studies which I don't
4 have time to go into.

5 HLA expression, we have a haplotype
6 match so that our melanoma, viable melanoma cells
7 can direct antigen present to 95 percent of the
8 Caucasian population, and then we have to depend on
9 indirect antigen presentation by host APCs in about
10 five percent of patients.

11 Antigen expression, TA-90, DC-100, GD-2,
12 GD-3 and GM-2 were all looked at. We have developed
13 in vitro potency assay based upon cytokine release
14 and the identity of the cell lines by DNA type.

15 This shows the ganglioside profile GD-2
16 and GD-3 of the three cell lines and of the final
17 mixture of the three, and this is done so that the
18 percentage of each of these antigens the final vial
19 should equal the individual cell lines.

20 And with GP-100 we have the three cell
21 lines and then the mixtures. Notice that one of the
22 cells does not carry GP-100.

23 The in vitro potency assay, it shows a
24 dose response to GM-CSF, and if we kill the cells by
25 heat at low temperatures, they're still intact, but

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 they don't stimulate in this assay, and confirming
2 the viability of our particular vaccine is an
3 important aspect.

4 The FDA has been ruthless in insisting
5 we had to have a quantitative antigen assay, and Dr.
6 Gupta's laboratory finally developed this assay for
7 TA-90. It shows different lots of vaccine, the
8 values obtained by three different technicians on
9 all of these lots, and the mean, and we really have,
10 I think -- are there with a quantitative antigen
11 assay.

12 So allogeneic vaccine to be effective
13 must induce response to tumor antigen in a high
14 percentage of patients, and the ability to induce
15 the response must be consistent over time and among
16 different vaccine lots.

17 And does our vaccine do it? Yes. Phase
18 II trials demonstrate consistent in vivo activity to
19 these criteria and the survival correlates with the
20 immune response function.

21 This is the skin test response to
22 different lots of vaccine in two-week intervals, and
23 as you can see, every lot of vaccine induces a good
24 skin test response and a good IgM antibody response.
25 When you see variations, low responses, they're

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 usually small numbers of patients, and it gets at
2 the problem of the heterogeneity in the immune
3 response.

4 And this is a prospective study, testing
5 this, but we see the same thing as we see in the
6 retrospective studies, that is, those that make both
7 antibody and DTH do better than those that make
8 either, and notice that only six out of some 70
9 patients did not make either, and with Stage III
10 disease we see the same thing.

11 So the vaccine then has been through
12 these steps that we thought were important to Phase
13 I-II trials, that complete regression of metastasis
14 seen, prolonged survival as a post surgical
15 adjuvant. In Stage III and IV melanoma, we've
16 compared to matched controls. We retrogressed
17 prospectively, compared the antibody responses to
18 specific antigens and the cellular immune responses
19 in regard to clinical course.

20 We developed QC and QA lot release
21 assays based upon clinically relevant product
22 characteristics. We've produced a vaccine based
23 upon these assays.

24 The test of vaccine in Phase II trials
25 for their ability to induce consistent immune

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 response to clinically relevant antigens and have
2 evaluated in prospective trials the relationship
3 between the specific immune response and clinical
4 results.

5 And then finally, an issue began this
6 year, Phase III trials of the vaccine as a post
7 surgical adjuvant, and here you can see Stage III
8 melanoma stratification factors randomized to BCG
9 plus C-VAX versus BCG plus a placebo.

10 Now, this trial began as an equivalence
11 trial in which we had interferon over here, but with
12 the recent data on interferon we thought that it was
13 no longer a good equivalence trial. So we switched
14 it to an efficacy trial.

15 For Stage IV melanoma, we resected just
16 the metastasis, randomized on the number of lesions,
17 and the same parallel format.

18 In closing, I would like to acknowledge
19 the team of collaborators at the John Wayne, Dr.
20 Richab Gupta, Dr. Dave Hoon, Dr. Guy Gammon, and
21 those many others that have worked on this project
22 over many years.

23 Thank you very much.

24 (Applause.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. NOGUCHI: We're just a little bit
2 ahead of time here, but I still would like you to
3 try to get back at about 9:40 so that we'll try to
4 keep on schedule.

5 Today and yesterday's speakers, at the
6 back of the screen, we have some refreshments, and
7 everyone else, at the same place as yesterday.

8 Let's be back at 9:40.

9 (Whereupon, the foregoing matter went
10 off the record at 9:23 a.m. and went
11 back on the record at 9:43 a.m.)

12 DR. NOGUCHI: Now, when we're talking
13 about autologous and allogeneic tumor vaccines, most
14 of the time we're talking about actually using
15 tumors themselves or the putative antigens for them.

16 There are other parts of the body though
17 that do react to that, and next talk before our
18 panel discussion is going to be on autologous or
19 allogeneic tumor derived heat shock protein-peptide
20 complexes.

21 Now, this is something I know a little
22 about because one of our scientists work on
23 Josophela (phonetic) where heat shock protein is a
24 major constituent, but I think it's going to be very

1 interesting to see how this fits into the whole
2 tumor vaccine paradigm.

3 And to present this today will be Dr.
4 Richard Young from MIT.

5 Dr. Young.

6 DR. YOUNG: Thank you, Dr. Noguchi, and
7 thank you, Dr. Puri, for the opportunity to come and
8 present this work to you.

9 Dr. Morton just reminded us of some of
10 the lessons of history, and it reminded me of a
11 lecture at MIT by a famous physicist last week who
12 was much less polite in reminding us of a historical
13 lesson. He said, "Many of you are too young to know
14 this and the rest of you are too old to remember."

15 (Laughter.)

16 DR. YOUNG: What I'm going to do is to
17 talk about something that is a bit more of a
18 reductionist consequence. It's a consequence of a
19 reductionist approach to what you've seen so far
20 with autologous cell vaccines.

21 I'm, in fact, going to talk about a
22 highly defined heat shock protein recombinant
23 approach. This work focuses on -- I'm going to go
24 through several topics. First, I'm going to
25 describe some of the history that led to realize

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that heat shock proteins have a specific utility for
2 immunotherapy. I'll tell you a little bit about the
3 design of these heat shock protein fusions. I'll
4 describe some preclinical evidence for efficacy, and
5 then I'll end by describing the manufacture of
6 clinical grade material where the identity, purity,
7 and reproducibility in the manufacturing process is
8 quite critical.

9 The history of this actually begins in
10 the early '80s when Douglas Young and I realized
11 that the immune system in humans and in animal
12 models during mycobacterial infection was focusing
13 on a limited set of antigens, and when we identified
14 these antigens, it turned out that they were
15 classical heat shock proteins.

16 Now, quite a bit was known about heat
17 shock proteins at this point, and we began to think
18 it was possible that, in fact, not just in
19 mycobacteria, but in many other bacterial, fungal,
20 and parasitic infections that one would find that
21 the immune system focuses much of its attention on
22 these specific antigens.

23 In bacteria, the two major heat shock
24 proteins are HSP-70 and HSP-60 or 65, and those two
25 proteins can account for up to 20 percent of the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 total protein mass in bacteria that have been
2 stressed by infection.

3 So there are abundant antigens that are
4 seen as among the immunodominant targets of both
5 antibody and T cell responses. In fact, in
6 mycobacterial infections in mice where it's been
7 quantitated and appears to be similar in humans,
8 about 20 percent of the entire CD-4 T cell response
9 that is focused on mycobacterial antigens is devoted
10 to HSP-60 and HSP-70.

11 So they're immunodominant antigens, and
12 it's emerged that these proteins are in a class of
13 proteins called molecular chaperons, and the job of
14 molecular chaperons is, in fact, to facilitate the
15 folding of proteins and to facilitate their
16 unfolding and elimination from cells.

17 Moreover, we know a whole lot about
18 these proteins. Not only do we know their
19 sequences, but we know their crystal structure, and
20 this is an example of just a piece of bacterial HSP-
21 70. It's a substrate binding domain, the C terminal
22 half of HSP-70.

23 So these are very highly characterized
24 proteins. We know and understand them in many cases
25 down to the three Angstrom level.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Why heat shock proteins for
2 immunotherapy? Well, what I hope to show you is
3 that, in fact, they're powerful immunostimulants.
4 They can be used in an adjuvant independent fashion.
5 Their action in all of the experiments I'm going to
6 describe to you is occurring in the absence of any
7 adjuvant. They elicit powerful humoral and cellular
8 responses, and I'm going to show you some
9 preclinical efficacy in tumor models.

10 We use fusion cassettes. We use either
11 mycobacterium tuberculosis or mycobacterium bovis
12 BCG HSP-70 and HSP-60. These, whether their origin
13 is in tuberculosis or in bovis BCG, the sequences
14 are identical.

15 And what we do is make these proteins as
16 recombinant protein fusion so their covalent
17 linkages -- these are single protein molecules then
18 that will have attached to them a protein component
19 of either an infectious pathogen or in several cases
20 I'm going to talk about antigens potentially useful
21 for cancer immunotherapy.

22 The cassette approach allows us to make
23 recombinant fusion proteins single molecules that
24 are easy to characterize. We have two choices in
25 these cassettes. We can either make a recombinant

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 HSP-65 or recombinant HSP-70 fusion. We can choose
2 any tumor associated antigen for which we have a DNA
3 sequence.

4 It's a hybrid protein. It's
5 administered, as I mentioned before, in an adjuvant
6 free, saline formulation, and it elicits tumor
7 antigen specific cytotoxic C lymphocytes.

8 The first model system I want to
9 describe to you employed an HSP-70 ova fusion. This
10 is a fragment of ova that represents immunoacids 161
11 through 276. In that fragment there is a very well
12 studied SIINFEKL epitope for H2B, and we
13 collaborated with Herman Eisen to study the ability
14 of this fusion molecule to elicit CTLs and protect
15 against B-16 melanomas.

16 The protocol we've used is to immunize
17 mice, C-57 black mice, on day zero with a boost at
18 day 14; to measure CTLs at day 24; and to challenge
19 animals on day 24 and score tumor growth.

20 Here's an example of the data we've
21 obtained. Where we take splenocytes from animals
22 immunized with either the ova HSP-70 fusion, a
23 control fusion protein containing HIV P-24 fused to
24 the same fragment of ova, or that fragment of ova
25 produced and administered on its own, and we've

S A G CORP.

1 examined two kinds of targets, either T2-K of B
2 cells that have been pulsed with the SIINFEKL
3 peptide or the same T2-K of B cells pulsed with an
4 irrelevant peptide.

5 And what you can see is only in the case
6 where we have splenocytes from animals that were
7 immunized with the HSP-70 ova fusion do we, in fact,
8 get significant cytolysis of this clone.

9 The response is quite avid. This is a
10 peptide titration where we've used a cytotoxic T
11 cell clone specific for SIINFEKL, and if compared,
12 the titration in this cytolysis experiment exhibited
13 by where we have a range of peptide concentrations
14 used to load the target clone, and we've compared
15 the ability of the CTL clone to lyse these targets
16 relative to splenocytes from either the control ova
17 albumin immunized mice or mice immunized with the
18 ova HSP-70 fusion.

19 And remarkably, the half maximal lysis
20 that you see across this titration is the same for
21 this very avid CTL clone as it is for the splenocyte
22 population in these animals.

23 These are CD-8 CTLs that are exhibiting
24 this behavior. This is one of the experiments that
25 demonstrates that. If we take both splenocytes and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 stratify them according to whether they're CD-4
2 depleted, CD-8 depleted, or if we take the CD-8
3 enriched population, it's the CD-8 population that
4 appears to be responsible for these immunological
5 behaviors.

6 Now, when we've taken B-16 melanoma
7 cells that have been derivatized, a cell line called
8 MO-15 that's very well characterized that expresses
9 ova albumen and we've asked what is the effect of
10 taking mice that have been immunized at day 24,
11 challenge them with approximately ten to the five
12 tumor cells, what we've seen is that in control mice
13 or in mice immunized with ova albumen alone, that
14 there's very poor survival.

15 Where, in contrast, animals that have
16 been immunized with the recombinant HSP ova protein
17 and saline, in fact, show reasonable survival, and
18 we followed these animals out there now for more
19 than ten months, and they've exhibited this level of
20 survival.

21 So we see protection by HSP-70 ova. We
22 obtain ova specific cytotoxic T cells, their Class I
23 restricted CD-8 cells. They recognize the specific
24 epitope that is typically recognized by C-57 black
25 mice when one immunizes with ova albumin and an

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 adjuvant, and I've shown you preclinical evidence
2 that we can obtain prophylaxis against an ova
3 melanoma challenge.

4 And we published this work last year.
5 Now, what was striking to us is that the literature
6 tells us that, in fact, if you take soluble ova
7 albumin, you cannot elicit ova specific CTLs even up
8 through a range of one milligram of ova albumin.

9 If, in fact, you derivatize this in some
10 way to make it a particulate, you can, in fact,
11 elicit CTLs, but we have a completely soluble
12 antigen we're looking at.

13 So that suggests to us that something
14 unusual is occurring that is a consequence of the
15 HSP-70 protein being there. It turns out it is not
16 a consequence of its presence per se, that is,
17 mixtures of HSP-70 and ova albumin will not do it.
18 It has to be a fusion.

19 And so we've come to wonder at the
20 mechanism by which this occurs, the classic version
21 of antigen presentation pathways are just summarized
22 up here in which exogenous soluble antigen is
23 typically endocytosed, brought into a lysosome where
24 it's degraded. It's associated with Class II and

S A G CORP.

1 presented on the surface of cells in the context of
2 Class II antigens.

3 In contrast, the antigens that end up
4 going through the Class I antigen presentation
5 pathway have typically been described as endogenous
6 antigens, and the ability of these HSP-70 ova
7 fusions to elicit as a soluble antigen a Class I
8 restricted T cell response suggests to us that
9 either there's some violation of this standard
10 pathway and/or that the HSP-70 fusions are driving
11 the antigen toward dendritic cells, which you heard
12 yesterday have a capacity to present antigen
13 obtained from outside cells via Class I pathway.

14 Now, I want to turn to some work that's
15 been done primarily at Stresgen Biotechnologies in
16 collaboration with us on an HSP-65 HPV E-7 molecule.
17 The HPV is, as you know, the most prevalent viral
18 sexually transmitted disease. It infects 30 to 50
19 percent of the sexually active population. The
20 virus can be detected in greater than 90 percent of
21 cervical carcinoma. HPV-16 is thought to be the
22 most prevalent etiologic agent, and it's detected,
23 as you know, by Pap smear.

24 The HPV associated cervical cancer, CIN
25 I/II, is found annually in 300,000 to 1.5 million

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 individuals, CIN III in 65,000. Invasive cancer
2 affects 14,000 or more individuals, and that leads
3 to almost 5,000 deaths per annum all in the United
4 States alone.

5 Now, we thought what we'd do is to make
6 a fusion with the E-7 antigen. That's because the
7 E-7 antigen is essential for transformation. It's
8 expressed continuously as far as we can tell in
9 infected cells. It's a true tumor specific antigen.
10 It's not always clear that tumor associate antigens
11 are, in fact, tumor specific.

12 It's well known to be a CTL target in
13 humans and an abundant A-2 containing population,
14 such as you see in North America. It's relevant
15 that there are A-2 epitopes in the C-7 antigen.

16 So the fusion protein that we've made
17 here is a fusion with HSP-65 from BCG. It contains
18 the entire heat shock protein fused to the entire
19 HPV E-7 protein.

20 So it's a single molecule. It can be
21 purified then as a single recombinant protein.

22 The model we're using is a model for
23 cervical carcinoma developed in T.C. Wu's
24 laboratory. It's called the TC-1 model. It's
25 developed here at Johns Hopkins. It's developed by

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 co-transforming cells with HPV-16 E-7, E-6, and
2 Harvey-RAS.

3 And immunotherapy has been previously
4 demonstrated with vaccine E-7 lab constructs.

5 The experimental protocol to examine
6 tumor regression and rechallenge was to take C-57
7 black mice, to implant that TC-1 tumor on day zero.
8 About ten to the five cells were used in this
9 implantation, and on day seven we administered about
10 100 micrograms of the recombinant fusion protein
11 with a boost at day 20 of a similar amount,
12 inoculated to the scruff of the neck.

13 Tumor incidence is scored throughout.
14 The subset of the animals that did not show tumors
15 have been rechallenged on day 45, and we've
16 continued to score tumor incidence.

17 And the data that we've obtained is
18 shown on this slide. What we're scoring here is
19 percent tumor incidence in various groups. There's
20 been about nine mice per group, and what you can see
21 is that animals that did not receive the fusion
22 protein but rather received the saline control; in
23 fact, ultimately obtained a tumor load that led to
24 100 percent incidence.

S A G CORP.

1 Whereas animals that, in fact, received
2 the inoculation by day 35 were largely free of
3 tumors. If we take the animals that are, in fact,
4 completely free of tumors and rechallenge them now
5 with a super tumorigenic dose, about five times ten
6 to the five TC-1 cells, what we find is that for a
7 transient period there is some tumor incidence, and
8 those animals then recover and exhibit essentially
9 no tumor load.

10 Whereas control animals that have been
11 inoculated with saline and added to this part of the
12 protocol in order to insure that, in fact, the tumor
13 cells are still quite active and show that that
14 control, in fact, works.

15 We wanted to know if instead of a boost,
16 instead of a vaccination and a challenge we could do
17 a single dose therapy, and so, in fact, this
18 experiment was designed to do that where about ten
19 to the five cells are implanted on day zero. We do
20 a single treatment on day seven with the HSP-7
21 immunotherapeutic, and then we score tumor growth.

22 And the results are shown on this slide.
23 What you're looking at is the percent tumor
24 incidence in these animals and the days after
25 injection of the TC-1 tumor cells, and what you see

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 is that in the control animals where they've been
2 injected with saline, there's a very high tumor
3 incidence. If we've injected another control, which
4 is the E-7 molecule alone, there's a very similar
5 very high tumor incidence.

6 Whereas if we have used the HSP-7 fusion
7 protein for this therapy, then in fact, we can
8 eliminate tumors from these animals.

9 So I've shown you that we can elicit
10 protection in a therapeutic mode with these TC-1
11 cells and this model of cervical carcinoma. We can
12 get subsequent protection from a rechallenge with a
13 high dose of tumor cells.

14 I've also shown you that we can use a
15 single dose treatment at a distal site. We see now
16 long-term survival. These animals have survived for
17 great than ten months, and we have Phase I trials
18 with this reagent planned for the first quarter of
19 next year.

20 I want to turn now to discuss just
21 briefly the production of clinical material. We
22 produce this material in E. coli. It's a standard
23 E. coli culture. The HSP E-7 is in cells. It's
24 release on lysis. The crude HSP E-7 is obtained by
25 removing cell debris. That bulk product is purified

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 from the crude lysate by multi-columned
2 chromatography processes, and ultimately the
3 purified bulk product is diluted in the formulation
4 buffer and filled into vials.

5 These are the specifications that we
6 follow for any of the product. The bulk products
7 release, if it meets standards relating to identity,
8 which is a peptide map I'm going to describe in just
9 a moment; the strength, which is the concentration
10 of material; and the purity as measured by SDS-PAGE.

11 It's also tested for some specific
12 impurities including endotoxin, the bioburden, and
13 DNA contamination. Other characteristics of the
14 product are also met, the appearance and pH and
15 osmolarity, and in combination we think these tests
16 tell us what it is, how pure it is, and by following
17 the manufacturing SOP, we think we know how to do it
18 again.

19 This is the peptide map that we can
20 reproducibly obtain from the product, the HSP-65 E-7
21 protein product. It's produced by a proteolytic
22 lysis of the product, and this HPLC profile is then
23 assayed by mass. spec., and the mass. spec. gives us
24 atomic resolution. We can identify each individual
25 peptide. We can even identify peptides that are

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 partial digestion products, and in this way get a
2 very high level of identity.

3 We can also examine the product by SDS-
4 PAGE. Here you see two different preparations.
5 This is under reducing conditions. The product by
6 our analysis by scanning is at least 95 percent
7 pure.

8 And I've told you that we have a well
9 controlled manufacturing process. We have
10 established rigorous quality control procedures.
11 These include identity, purity, strength as measured
12 by the concentration, and stability as assayed by,
13 in a temporal fashion, the quality of that peptide
14 map.

15 So where are we now with the E-7
16 immunotherapy? We have preclinical evidence for
17 efficacy, a well controlled manufacturing process,
18 and as I mentioned, our first clinical trial with
19 this material is planned for the first quarter of
20 next year.

21 Finally, I'd like to conclude by
22 thanking my collaborators, Kimiko Suzue, and
23 M.D./Ph.D. student at MIT and Harvard. Herman Eisen
24 has played a critical role in the analysis of
25 cytotoxic T cells. Hidde Ploegh at Harvard, who's

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 collaborated on much of this; Marv Siegel, who's
2 Vice President for R&D at Stresgen Biotechnologies,
3 and a very talented team of his composed of Lee
4 Mizzen, Randy Chu, and Leslie Boux.

5 Thank you very much.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. NOGUCHI: I'd like to now invite all
8 of the speakers for this session to join us at the
9 table and to supplement us, we're also going to have
10 Dr. Michael Hanna, Dr. Marvin Siegel, Dr. Jeanne
11 Novak, and Dr. Earl Dye.

12 And I think the way we'd like to do this
13 part of it is to start to get some discussion going
14 on the four questions that we've posed to you
15 already. I'm going to just briefly read the outline
16 of what we have and then ask the panelists who have
17 not spoken yet to answer one or more of the
18 questions. Because of time we would suggest that
19 you pick one and try to address that in some detail.

20 When we're talking about products, and
21 just to reassure everyone, while we are very happy
22 that some folks can do peptide maps of the precision
23 we just saw, we're not going to require that for
24 everyone yet.

25 (Laughter.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. NOGUCHI: But that's kind of where
2 you ultimately want to go, but given that that's the
3 gold standard, product characterization is going to
4 be somewhat less than that, and some of the
5 questions are what do you all think as a panel might
6 be the most appropriate test.

7 We've already heard from several
8 speakers that the concept and the ability to do a
9 pre-immunization potency assay is somewhat
10 problematic, and we do recognize that, but we would
11 like some help on helping to figure out exactly how
12 we can both assure the quality in terms of the
13 product as far as potency goes and yet still be able
14 to move forward in this field.

15 Purity is another question, and
16 obviously if you can do a recombinant fusion protein
17 and get -- I was kind of surprised there. That was
18 only 95 percent pure. Actually for most of our
19 recombinants we're shooting for a little bit higher
20 purity, but for the rest of you all, I think that
21 it'll be a little bit of a different concept of what
22 purity is.

23 And then in terms of specifications,
24 once again, I think the last presentation was sort
25 of where we would like eventually people to be, but

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 short of that, what are the meaningful parameters
2 that are going to help us in this?

3 Now, what I'd like to do is first call
4 on Dr. Hanna to see if he has a specific topic that
5 he would like to really address from those four
6 questions.

7 DR. HANNA: I would like to take a few
8 minutes to address the topic of potency and the post
9 immunization value of delayed cutaneous type
10 hypersensitivity in vaccines where it's important.

11 Now, for allogeneic vaccines, by nature
12 these vaccines are going to be immunogenic. The
13 question is: is it a functional or effective
14 immunization?

15 For autologous vaccines, by nature they
16 should not be immunogenic, except for tumor cells
17 that may have a small proportion of tumor associated
18 antigens, and in this case, this is what you hope to
19 achieve with an autologous vaccine, is an effective
20 immunization.

21 I have a few slides to make this point,
22 and then we can open it to discussion. Could I have
23 the first slide, please?

24 This is a study that was performed
25 through the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group, and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 it was an autologous colon tumor cell vaccination
2 program. In this study, induction or primary
3 immunization with three vaccines, giving one a week
4 for three weeks, was the regimen.

5 And when it was first reported, the
6 intent to treat analysis was that there was no
7 significant improvement in outcome in Stage II or
8 III colon cancer patients based on immunization, but
9 because we took a decentralized manufacturing
10 approach, basically a home brew vaccine production
11 approach, there was discovered that many patients
12 did not get the treatment that they were supposed to
13 get or the treatment didn't meet specifications.

14 So an evaluation was made of those
15 patients that got the specified vaccines at the
16 proper dose, and it showed a very strong trend
17 towards improved outcome in the treated group versus
18 the controlled group.

19 And then we took and went one step
20 further, and the team of us, the ECOG investigators
21 and myself that was exploring this data, then looked
22 at those patients that did get immunized and looked
23 at their delayed cutaneous hypersensitivity response
24 to their third and final immunization, which was

1 autologous irradiated tumor cells alone, and
2 compared that to clinical outcomes.

3 And you can see that for both survival
4 and disease free survival, those patients that did
5 not have a significant induration had a very poor
6 outcome for both survival and disease free survival.
7 In fact, it was not significantly different than the
8 surgery only control group.

9 But in patients that had what would be
10 considered by the Mann II test criteria a
11 significant DTH, the outcome was much improved, and
12 for patients that had greater than centimeter
13 induration, it was even better, indicating that DCH
14 could be a very important surrogate endpoint that
15 takes into consideration both potency of the vaccine
16 when it's administered, status of the patient's
17 immune response, and tumor burden.

18 The reason I say this was these
19 differences were significantly different in Stage II
20 colon cancer, but not in Stage III colon cancer.

21 The next Phase III study we did where we
22 kept an eye on this surrogate endpoint was a study
23 where we gave the induction immunizations and
24 boosted at six months, which this study indicated
25 would have been helpful.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 In this study, we had two indurations to
2 measure, the induration to the third vaccine and the
3 induration to the boost that was given six months
4 later, and I show this slide just to show you that
5 the basic tenet of immunology is that a boost should
6 be equal to or greater in terms of reactivity than
7 the primary immunization is true because you could
8 see the fourth vaccinations, the DCH, were equal to
9 or greater in most cases than the primary
10 immunization, and the resultant outcome on an intent
11 to treat analysis in all patients, Stages IIs and
12 IIIs, was a significant difference in disease free
13 interval, and even more importantly, a statistical
14 difference in disease free survival in the Stage II
15 patients and not the Stage III patients.

16 So it makes a point that the
17 immunization could be effective and tumor burden
18 could be the limiting factor.

19 Thank you very much.

20 DR. NOGUCHI: Mike, thank you for
21 presenting that data.

22 Why don't we spend a few minutes here
23 discussing it? Because I think that this represents
24 one of the biggest dilemmas that FDA faces. Here we
25 have some very impressive data in terms of a direct

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 test on a patient, but the real critical issue we
2 would like to explore is what can you do before you
3 actually inject such that you at least have some
4 idea that is going to have a chance to have that
5 DTH?

6 I know the people from AVACS have been
7 struggling with this, but I'll open it up to the
8 panel here to see if we have any further thoughts on
9 this particular issue.

10 Yes, Mike.

11 DR. HANNA: Our major criteria for
12 potency in both of these Phase III studies was
13 viability and metabolically active irradiated tumor
14 cells. We had to have greater than 70 percent
15 viable cells going into the immunization.

16 DR. NOGUCHI: Is that good enough for
17 the panel? Do you think that's going to be good
18 enough or are there other things that might be done?

19 Early.

20 DR. DYE: I think that autologous
21 vaccine certainly presents some very unique problems
22 in terms of trying to assess their potential to do
23 benefit in these patients, but I think that it --

24 DR. NOGUCHI: Yeah, Earl, put it right
25 in your face just like FDA.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 (Laughter.)

2 DR. DYE: I don't know if this mic is
3 on. Can you hear me in the back?

4 Okay. I think that the point I'm trying
5 to make is I agree very much with what the speakers
6 have had to say here today in regard to the
7 uniqueness of the autologous vaccine product
8 situation. I mean, we're not faced with the
9 advantage of being able to do a great deal of
10 characterization on these kinds of products before
11 they need to be administered to patients.

12 And so it behooves us during the early
13 stages of product development to develop an
14 understanding of what the important critical
15 criteria are associated with these vaccines that do
16 benefit in patients.

17 If assessments of viability or metabolic
18 activity are important components that elicit
19 responses in patients that can be measured and
20 correlated with clinical benefit, then these are the
21 kinds of things that need to be followed, monitored,
22 controlled for in the development of these kinds of
23 products.

24 DTH type reactivity may be a perfectly
25 acceptable form of assessment of biological activity

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of these products, but it needs to be demonstrated
2 that there is some relationship between that type of
3 a response in patients and the ultimate clinical
4 benefit that they intend to derive.

5 The real challenge for us is to try to
6 demonstrate that these vaccines are doing some
7 benefit in patients. If we can identify correlates
8 of clinical benefits and clearly establish that they
9 do represent a measure to predict how these things
10 are going to perform in patients, then that's what
11 we have to try to do.

12 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. I think that was an
13 agreement. Is there -- yes, from the audience.

14 I feel like Jerry Springer up here. So
15 --

16 (Laughter.)

17 DR. NOGUCHI: Yes, please use the
18 microphone so we can all hear the question or the
19 comment. Actually, we hope it will be advice.

20 DR. SOSMAN: I guess I had two comments
21 and two questions, and the comments are really just
22 to instigate not a riot but discussions.

23 And I guess the two comments are one is
24 obviously very simple. You know, I guess my feeling
25 as opposed to Dr. Morton's is that, you know, tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunology has arrived because of all the great
2 scientists that are in this audience, not attorneys,
3 but that was just one.

4 And the other is I guess I see
5 autologous tumors and allogeneic tumors differently
6 than the panel. I see that this is an important
7 field. I mean, I'm not interested in working in it,
8 but I think it is a critical field.

9 (Laughter.)

10 DR. SOSMAN: No, no. I mean I certainly
11 want to take the side that peptides are better, but
12 maybe peptides aren't better. Maybe tumor cells are
13 better. I agree.

14 But I don't quite understand where you
15 go with this because it looks to me like allogeneic
16 tumor cells and autologous tumor cells are really
17 proof of principle, and that's what we should do
18 with them and not then manufacture them for large
19 clinical trials.

20 But then if we can prove a principle in
21 small trials, then take them and develop products
22 that are translatable to everything, there must be
23 something in those tumor cells, and I agree. I
24 thought, Dr. Morton, your talk was outstanding. I
25 agreed with conceptually everything you said, but I

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 do have a question for you after this; that
2 everything you said made sense.

3 But I would have taken from that is not
4 to do the study you're doing, but instead try to
5 figure out how to purify products that we could all
6 use and we could all understand.

7 And those are the two, and maybe I won't
8 ask my questions.

9 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. Let me just address
10 that in a general sense. I think that from our
11 point of view from the FDA, the question is which
12 way should we go. Should we purify? Should we do
13 this? Shall we use crude lysates, whatever?

14 What our basic bottom line is we're
15 looking for whatever works. Now, it's easier in a
16 way to use well specified types of products because
17 the control activities for that are quite
18 straightforward, but that does not necessarily mean
19 that they do or don't work any better.

20 And unfortunately, you know, it's sort
21 of what will you approve? Whatever works.

22 Now, yes. Let's have Bernie take a
23 crack, too.

24 DR. FOX: Sort of a comment to Jeff's
25 comments. We do autologous tumor vaccination as

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 well as other model studies, but in the models if
2 you vaccinate with an autologous tumor in the case
3 of a melanoma in D-5, which is the same tumor that
4 Jim uses, if you look in the adjoining lymph nodes
5 of those animals, you find T cells that are specific
6 for at least five of 20 GPU-100 peptides. They also
7 recognize TRP-2, but don't recognize other peptides,
8 any of the other 15 GPU-100 peptides or other ova
9 peptides.

10 So as a comment, I'm glad Jeff's getting
11 back up, but as a comment to that, I think that
12 while peptides are nice, being as this is an
13 autologous and allogeneic vaccine panel, that at
14 least we know that at least in some models that
15 vaccination with the tumor does give you specific
16 peptide reactive T cells.

17 DR. NOGUCHI: Dr. Hanna.

18 DR. HANNA: I think that the peptides
19 are nice, and Don had made a point to me that if we
20 had had this meeting 15 years ago, there'd have been
21 12 people here and a few people wandering in and out
22 and wondering if we're not on the fringe.

23 I think that when ten, 15 years passes
24 and we have this meeting again, if we have the
25 peptide data that shows clinical effectiveness, we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 would all go in that direction, but clinical trials
2 have to be conducted before a decision can be made
3 as to which is the best way to go.

4 The autologous and allogeneic cell
5 vaccines could be the control groups that the
6 peptides would have to compete against.

7 DR. SOSMAN: No, I actually don't even
8 think -- I mean, it may be right that you could
9 isolate. There'd be too many as Bernie said, just
10 too many to isolate, but then what you're going to
11 really have to do is figure out how to make it
12 simple because, you know, I treat patients like a
13 number of people here, and it's just not feasible to
14 do this.

15 And what you're going to have to do
16 then -- I mean this is obviously my opinion -- is
17 you're going to have to figure out a way to get it
18 out of paraffin blocks because that you'll have on
19 everybody, but you're not going to have fresh tumor
20 on everybody.

21 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. A question here.
22 Now, let's try to direct it a little bit back toward
23 potency if we can.

24 DR. BYSTRYN: Well, maybe I can make a
25 comment regarding potency assays, and it's really

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 important to differentiate between assays which are
2 looking at the ability of the vaccine to induce an
3 immune response in people where, for example, DTH, I
4 think, is a very simple and good assay, and assays
5 that are going to enable you to measure the potency
6 of the product hopefully before it goes into a
7 patient.

8 The problem with assays which look at
9 the ability of the vaccine to induce an immune
10 response in people to evaluate potency is that now
11 you have two variables that you are looking at. One
12 is the potency of the vaccine itself, but the other
13 is the ability of the patient to respond, and that
14 is going to make it very difficult to interpret the
15 data.

16 And, therefore, I think that in terms of
17 trying to think about potency assay, you really want
18 to think about assays that you can do in vitro, some
19 kind of an assay of that type, using animals as a
20 way to examine potency again, I think, as a
21 fundamental flaw, which is that if you immunize an
22 animal with a human product, you're going to get an
23 immune response to that, and you're not going to
24 know whether it's a response simply because you have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 a xenogenic protein or because this protein happens
2 to be immunogenic.

3 And at that point all you are really
4 getting is an assay of identity, and you can get
5 identity a lot more simply by simply probing the
6 product directly with whatever you have to assay.

7 So I think that in terms of looking at
8 potency, you really want to focus on in vitro assays
9 that are going to examine some aspect of what you
10 think is important from the strength.

11 DR. HANNA: You know, I didn't mean to
12 make it an either/or contest. In the FDA today for
13 the BCTG vaccine it requires a variety of in vitro
14 assays. It requires a variety of assays in
15 preclinical studies, and the last I knew, as of last
16 year, it required a functional test in patients
17 where you immunize with one lot and show that 90
18 percent of them converted in the Mann II test to
19 PPD.

20 So we have a history of vaccines, and we
21 shouldn't reinvent the wheel. DCH has been a
22 primary measure of both the vaccine's quality and
23 the patient's ability to recognize it and response
24 immunologically, and I'm saying that there's a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 precedent for it. We ought to not fail to recognize
2 it in the tumor vaccine situation.

3 DR. NOGUCHI: Dr. Seaver.

4 DR. SEEVER: Yes. I think in this
5 approach, and I'm talking mainly about autologous,
6 not allogeneic, and probably things have been dated
7 before, is either you pay the piper now or you pay
8 it later, and that's what I'd like to suggest.

9 If you can well characterize, if there
10 is a test that you can do on the patient beforehand
11 to say it's going to work or not work, I'm sure all
12 of us would agree to do that, but let's assume that
13 that isn't the case, and we do have this
14 heterogeneous response.

15 I think the issue comes up it's not to
16 say that we can't do a potency assay whatsoever,
17 throw up our hands in the air, because think of it
18 from the patient's point of view. Because I've
19 coached some people that have had cancer and we're
20 trying to figure out which trial to go into, and
21 that is if I have a therapy that's relatively
22 nontoxic over standard therapy which is relatively
23 toxic and is going to really affect my lifestyle,
24 then I'm probably going to opt for the nontoxic
25 therapy first.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 But I would like to know whether it's
2 working or not. So the ability to do something on
3 the patient later, whether it be DTH, whether it be
4 T cell, I don't care. To have a response within a
5 month, to know whether you should do this,
6 especially since many of these autologous therapies
7 are multiple injections, and if you're going to go
8 through the expense of multiple injections and want
9 reimbursement for it, we'd better have some way of
10 saying that it is working in lieu of having, quote,
11 unquote, these potency assays.

12 DR. HANNA: And I agree, and we test
13 them at three weeks. We have a three-week assay, at
14 three weeks afterwards. Now, if the patient has no
15 DTH, other interventions may be warranted.

16 DR. SEAVER: Right, and that's what I'm
17 saying, is maybe one can formulate with the FDA a
18 tradeoff strategy that in that case a post testing
19 is part of it.

20 DR. HANNA: Exactly. Thank you.

21 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. Yes. Let's have
22 some more comments.

23 Go right ahead, Jeanne. Dr. Novak.

24 DR. NOVAK: Yes. I think with regards
25 to the issue of potency, one of the things that I'd

S A G CORP.

1 like to come back to is some of the comments
2 regarding whether or not you have assurance that
3 your product is going to work once it's in the
4 clinic.

5 Now, I just want to touch back on the
6 point that that's why we're doing Phase III
7 randomized trials, to get an assessment of whether
8 this product is going to work, and I think certainly
9 if one can look at a potency assay that would be an
10 absolute predictor of outcome, that would be the
11 gold standard. There's no doubt about it.

12 But I think I would also have to say we
13 need to look back at a couple of other historical
14 perspectives. That also should guide us and
15 hopefully the regulatory agency about how we view
16 potency.

17 I think we should consider that this
18 assay is in place certainly to help guide and give
19 us assurance that this product, in fact, is
20 consistently manufactured, and can we always find an
21 activity test for a product that is always going to
22 give us an outcome or give us a handle on how it's
23 going to work in the clinic, and I would tell you
24 that based on preventive vaccine work, there are
25 certainly a number of vaccines where the potency

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 assay is not always directly correlated to what one
2 might expect in the clinic.

3 Many of those assays are oftentimes just
4 an assessment of immunogenicity, and a lot of that
5 work was done before some of the key antigens or
6 protective epitopes, for example, had been
7 identified, and it's only now as vaccines, for
8 example, preventive vaccines, are moving towards
9 well characterized technologies where one can begin
10 to ask more rigorous questions because you have the
11 tools and the ability to do that.

12 Again, it's not to say that we shouldn't
13 be looking for that gold standard, certainly an
14 activity test where you can have a high assurance of
15 the activity in the clinic, but I think we need to
16 come back and also think about are there activity
17 tests or in cases of autologous vaccines where you
18 are faced with a time line, are there other types of
19 assays, analytical assays or characterization of the
20 product that would give you an assurance that if
21 your product is alive, for example, it's viable or
22 if it expresses a particular antigen at a certain
23 level or has other characteristics that you've found
24 in previous studies to have had some correlation

S A G CORP.

1 with outcome, then those, again, are assays that I
2 think should also be considered.

3 You can't discount that because, again,
4 we need to go back to help FDA feel comfortable with
5 how do you release a product and what do you set as
6 a specification.

7 So I would also propose, in addition to
8 continuing to look for the gold standard, to
9 consider potency assessment as part of a total
10 quality assurance package, certainly a validated
11 part of an aspect of assuring validated manufacture,
12 but also looking at parameters that could, in fact,
13 provide some assurance based on the initial clinical
14 data that you have, such as, again, correlative
15 assay, be it analytical only rather than functional.

16 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. Let me put this
17 back to you directly then. Is cell number and
18 viability and the correlate of a certain amount of
19 DTH reactivity in the clinical trial, albeit after
20 it has to be measured three weeks after the
21 injection, is that enough? Do you think that's
22 appropriate for this stage of development?

23 What other correlates can we really look
24 at?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. NOVAK: Yes, I think that is a very
2 good question, and I think I have to stay relatively
3 open on that because one of my concerns always
4 about, for example, the DTH assay, relying on
5 something that's post treatment one has to say how
6 do you make a decision about the manufacture or
7 administration of that product when it's post
8 treatment.

9 So the caveat there, I'd have to agree
10 is that you're already into an administration
11 process, but if that could be translated to
12 developing a useful assay on the same premise so
13 that that could be done at the time of manufacture
14 or potentially gaining a particular history with
15 that activity in a particular patient base, maybe
16 there has to be room to look at that option for
17 potency.

18 I think it's a very difficult question
19 for the autologous vaccines.

20 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay, yes.

21 PARTICIPANT: I'd like to address this
22 across the whole panel.

23 Since we're not sure what specific
24 immune test to monitor, might it not be useful, and
25 I'd be interested in the gamut of opinions, might it

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 not be useful to sequentially measure perhaps some
2 nonspecific parameters, C reactive proteins,
3 circulating IL-2R, neopterin, changes in TNB
4 subsets, and then perhaps to try to use that, and
5 that could even be done retrospectively as a marker
6 that we gave this vaccine and something was
7 happening physiologically, and then to go back and
8 look at that in comparison with who responded and
9 who didn't respond.

10 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay, panel. There's a
11 potential way to address this.

12 Yes, Dr. Morton.

13 DR. MORTON: I think the problem is that
14 the very key point that Jean-Claude Bystryrn made is
15 that the ability to induce a response will vary with
16 the tumor burden, the stage of the patient, and in
17 our work with the genetics of the patients.

18 These are self-antigens or modified
19 self-antigens, and we know from work in animal
20 models that immune responder genes are real, and so
21 you'll have one patient that will respond to a
22 particular antigen but not to another antigen, and
23 vice versa.

24 And so since when you're trying to base
25 the characterization of your product on the clinical

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 responses in the patient, it's not a valid -- in my
2 estimation it's not valid because the response of
3 the patient is going to depend on so many factors.

4 So I think in order to assure
5 consistency in manufacture, you have to have some
6 markers. You have to have some milestones that tell
7 you you have, in fact, produced a consistent product
8 from lot to lot.

9 DR. NOGUCHI: Well, I think the point
10 being here is we know that response is going to vary
11 per person, but are there some responses that are
12 more nonspecific so that you could at least say this
13 has some potency, and if the patient can respond,
14 then at least I know that this lot of vaccine is
15 worth injecting.

16 I think that's kind of what you're
17 getting at. Is there something nonspecific we could
18 measure that --

19 PARTICIPANT: Well, suppose we give a
20 vaccine and it's going to elicit regression of a
21 metastatic disease. Now, that has to be reflected. In
22 our state of the art, certain we wish we had better
23 tools, but that's going to have to be reflected
24 somehow in other kinds of intermediary and
25 detectable markers.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And perhaps that might be an early
2 detection of some kind of physiological activity
3 even in those patients where whatever immune
4 response was mounted wasn't effective in producing a
5 clinically observable regression.

6 DR. NOGUCHI: Right. I think it's sort
7 of like there still remains the two issues. One is
8 the individual who has a variable response, but the
9 other is trying to get something that has some
10 consistency to it so that if the patient can respond
11 they will.

12 DR. MULE: The whole premise in many of
13 these immunization strategies is based on the
14 concept of eliciting a specific response. That's
15 the whole basis of many of these vaccines.

16 And Session IV actually is going to
17 tackle a lot of the issues surrounding immunologic
18 monitoring, and maybe some of these questions should
19 be delayed until we hear more about appropriate
20 immunologic monitoring in the next session.

21 DR. NOGUCHI: Any other comments? Yes.

22 DR. HANNA: Plus there's another point.
23 We've had a lot of experience with in vitro assays.
24 I mean this place here and the building behind it
25 developed most of them.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 What we learned from them is that on a
2 population basis, they seem to correlate, but when
3 you got down to the individual, you couldn't make a
4 decision in terms of response or no response, but if
5 you had an average, it seemed to correlate with
6 responsiveness of a group, and that came from
7 syngeneic mouse experiments.

8 DR. NOGUCHI: Bernie, did you have a
9 comment?

10 Okay. Yes.

11 DR. LIVINGTON: I think the question is
12 quite different for autologous and allogeneic
13 vaccines. The allogeneic vaccines, as Don Morton
14 has described or Jean-Claude Bystryr or others who
15 are using allogeneic vaccines, readily are amenable
16 to potency assays with antibodies, as has been
17 described very nicely today.

18 The whole basis for autologous vaccines,
19 which are so much more cumbersome to use and prepare
20 is individually specific antigen, the mutated self-
21 antigens which are, you know, so important in mouse
22 models, and that, I think, inherently is impossible
23 to determine in advance in the vaccine.

24 And so I guess you're thrown back even
25 in the autologous to using some of the shared

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antigens which have been defined to gauge potency,
2 but I must say I have a sinking feeling about that
3 because really your whole goal, if you want to
4 immunize against these shared antigens, the
5 allogeneic antigens or higher tech. vaccines,
6 allogeneic vaccines or higher tech vaccines are a
7 better way to go.

8 The only reason to go to the trouble of
9 autologous is individually unique antigens, and I
10 don't know how you gauge that. I think that's a
11 pretty important question though.

12 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. Yes, please.

13 DR. BYSTRYN: You know, taking into
14 account the difficulty of measuring potency, I
15 wonder whether -- and the need to, you know, move
16 ahead with the development of products that may help
17 the American public, I wonder whether at the present
18 time maybe one possible solution will be to accept
19 the suggestion that was made by one of the earlier
20 other speakers that we talk about identity plus and
21 that we think of potency perhaps as the ability to
22 demonstrate in the vaccine the presence of a number
23 of antigens that, you know, you believe may be
24 biologically relevant, the assumption being that if
25 the antigens were there, then the vaccine would have

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the potency to induce an immune response to these
2 antigens.

3 Because right now I think we're all
4 having a very difficult time trying to come up with
5 assays that can measure potency that don't rely to
6 actually doing clinical trial with the vaccine to
7 see what the immune response is that is induced,
8 which is kind of, you know, potency post facto,
9 which you probably don't want.

10 So my suggestion would be that we just
11 look at potency, define it as the presence of
12 relevant antigens in the vaccine, and of the
13 demonstration of such antigens

14 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. I want to use that
15 comment sort of as the closing point of discussion
16 for the panel. We've heard kind of all different
17 sorts of proposals being sent around here, but let's
18 just try to close with whether the panel thinks
19 individually and as a whole is that going to be
20 adequate enough.

21 And I want to just kind of close this by
22 going right down from the end.

23 DR. SIEGEL: I think the issue that we
24 keep talking about is really one of being able to
25 predict or get a prognostic indicator that we are,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 in fact, manufacturing the same thing over and over
2 again. Granted that we don't know, as you said, on
3 an individual patient basis whether they're going to
4 respond, but at least can we control what we're
5 putting in on a patient-by-patient basis so we can
6 even determine whether or not there is any
7 statistical correlation to any of those parameters?

8 I think we're forced to make a series of
9 analytical measurements on whatever we're putting
10 in, and in fact, can conduct those trials to see
11 whether there is any correlation to maybe an antigen
12 map or something like that that enables us to go
13 back into the clinical trial situation and see
14 whether anything correlates because at this point I
15 don't know that there is a single entity or even a
16 series of entities that you can use prospectively to
17 say, "Well, if I have A, B, C, and D and not E and
18 not F, then I will get a certain kind of activity."

19 I think you're almost forced to say,
20 "Let me map what I have. Let me do the very
21 expensive experiment instead of in mice, but in
22 people to see if there is any correlation between
23 what I put in and what I get out the other end."

24 Because I think that's where we are at
25 this point. We don't know what to map.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. NOGUCHI: Dr. Young.

2 DR. YOUNG: I think I'd just like to
3 echo a comment that Marvin just made, and that is to
4 say I don't know how you deal with this entirely
5 today, but I think very soon, in months if not
6 weeks, you will have the ability to take this
7 material and do genome-wide profiling and actually
8 determine the precise number of messenger earning
9 molecules for every species that you can detect on
10 chips.

11 And although that is an expensive
12 technology, you will be able to understand the
13 identity of that material to an extraordinary level,
14 and you'll be able to do cluster analysis on the
15 information you get later on when you determine its
16 clinical efficacy.

17 So I think it's a very difficult problem
18 to deal with now, but in echoing Marvin's comments,
19 I think understanding the material you're dealing
20 with is just going to be critical.

21 DR. NOGUCHI: Dr. Novak.

22 DR. NOVAK: I think I'd like to just
23 focus back on the issue from a regulatory
24 perspective and with regards to the requirements for

1 having confidence in the release of a product based
2 on purity, potency, et cetera, and ID.

3 The potency test, in my mind, for these
4 products, again, as we've already discussed, is very
5 difficult. If one holds to the strict sense of
6 having an activity that correlates with the outcome,
7 again, it's very difficult. We don't know enough
8 about, especially in this case, the autologous
9 vaccines because of the individual nature of these
10 vaccines, and from a release point of view, it makes
11 it very difficult when you have short time lines to
12 do activity tests even in a generic sense, such as
13 cytokine release assays or other in vitro assays
14 that might give you a sense that there's some
15 activity here, albeit it may not be directly
16 related.

17 And I also agree with the comments that
18 we certainly don't know all of the entities in these
19 vaccines that are absolutely required for positive
20 outcome.

21 But all of that said, I think that the
22 challenge still has to be at this point in time
23 because we don't have these advanced technologies,
24 we don't what all of the antigens are that are

1 critical; we have to look at the parameters that we
2 do know something about.

3 And we've heard today that for both the
4 allogeneic and the autologous vaccines by ability is
5 a factor, and I think that has to be quotiented into
6 a total package where you can't necessarily look at
7 an activity specifically and say, "Yes, this
8 satisfies a requirement for release."

9 We need to look at the package in total,
10 and again, I think that's a combination of antigen
11 identification where possible, activities where
12 possible and time permits, be it in vitro or in some
13 sort of an animal model, and also as much
14 characterization as possible, also keeping in mind
15 that characterizing your product and setting up
16 release assays is really just there are two
17 different issues.

18 Your release assays are still only a
19 subset of what you hopefully are doing as a total
20 characterization of your product. So, again, we
21 need to bring that back down to what we're talking
22 about as far as product release and characterization
23 and separating that from everything else you'd like
24 to know about your product and hopefully we will

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 know as we continue Phase III studies and we
2 continue further characterization.

3 DR. NOGUCHI: Early.

4 DR. DYE: Well, I think that pretty much
5 sums it up. I think from a regulatory perspective
6 Dr. Novak has really captured very eloquently the
7 issues that face us with all biologic products, not
8 only the autologous or allogeneic tumor cell
9 vaccines.

10 I think it's critical to realize that
11 there's a need to know from lot to lot or from
12 patient to patient that the process that's being
13 used to prepare these vaccines is preparing products
14 that are going to do benefit to these patients and
15 not cause harm.

16 It's important to know that if these
17 patients are going to receive multiple injections of
18 these vaccines, that the injections they receive the
19 first time are going to be comparable with the
20 injections that they receive at later times, and so
21 there needs to be a way of assessing these products
22 for the important characteristics that are going to
23 define whether or not they induce the kind of
24 response in patients that we're hoping to induce.

S A G CORP.

1 I think identity plus is a no brainer.
2 Certainly we need to know what the critical
3 components or markers are on these products that are
4 going into patients, how they relate to the kinds of
5 responses that we're trying to engender, whether or
6 not things such as cell viability, metabolic
7 activity, the ability to induce some sort of a
8 functional response in tissue culture in animals or
9 in patients are all part of a package that need to
10 be assessed in terms of evaluating whether these
11 products are going to be useful or not.

12 And I think that it's a challenge that
13 we can't ignore, that we have to continue to look
14 for solutions.

15 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. In the interest of
16 time, since all of the rest of you have actually had
17 a chance to speak except for Bernie, but you're
18 going to speak later, if there's any disagreement
19 with what we've been hearing, this is your
20 opportunity.

21 Yes, Dr. Mule.

22 DR. MULE: With respect to DC based
23 vaccines, we discussed yesterday actually the
24 complications involved in defining potency at this
25 early stage. What complicates it, of course, is the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fact that we don't know yet, and you hear from
2 Jacques Banchereau and Ralph Steinman that we don't
3 know yet what dendritic cell to use.

4 We don't know how best to expose antigen
5 to dendritic cells. We don't know how to best give
6 dendritic cells. There's a lot of information about
7 IV route of administration, interdermal, subcu. We
8 don't know how long the vaccine is efficacious once
9 it's injected.

10 So to me it's like trying to get to the
11 ball before Cinderella's stepsisters. I think it's
12 a little bit early to make clear-cut definitions of
13 potency with respect to at least the DC based
14 vaccines.

15 DR. NOGUCHI: Okay. What I'd like to do
16 is just thank the panel and thank the audience for
17 providing an extremely valuable discussion. I can
18 assure you from our FDA perspective, we will be
19 immediately looking and trying to evaluate this and
20 spread the wisdom throughout all of our evaluations
21 of all the vaccines, including the ones you can
22 characterize.

23 So thank you very much.

24 (Applause.)

1 DR. NOGUCHI: Now we'll be moving right
2 into our next session. One of the co-hosts here is
3 actually my boss, Dr. Jay Siegel. Dr. Siegel has
4 had a long and distinguished career here at the FDA
5 and the NIH campus and is an immunologist of some
6 repute. I think just a few years ago he reluctantly
7 gave up the lab, but he certainly has not given up
8 his interest in immune responses, and especially of
9 tumors.

10 His co-host here will be Dr. Mario
11 Sznol, who is the head of the Biologics Evaluation
12 Section at the Investigational Drug Branch, Cancer
13 Therapy Evaluation Program, NCI. We like those long
14 acronyms, but Dr. Siegel will be opening this
15 session.

16 DR. SIEGEL: Well, thank you.

17 Okay. I have an announcement that the
18 poster abstracts must be removed from the boards no
19 later than 2:30 this afternoon.

20 We now move to Session IV entitled
21 "Preclinical Strategies and Immunological Assessment
22 in Early Clinical Trials of tumor Vaccines." In so
23 doing, we cross a bridge that several have ventured
24 across already, moving from how to characterize the

1 product to how to characterize the immune response
2 to the product.

3 I think this is a very exciting and
4 important question. As we heard from Dr. Keegan
5 yesterday, the immune response is not a measure of
6 benefit, nor is it an accepted surrogate, and I
7 would add that it's far from being one. We're
8 several controlled clinical trials short for any
9 given product in response and benefit of knowing,
10 understanding a relationship.

11 Yet it's extremely important, as some
12 speakers have noted, to select which strategies to
13 go into clinical trials, to optimize the strategy,
14 dose, and regimen, and the like, and I would add to
15 that even after the demonstration of efficacy for a
16 given product in disease, it will remain quite
17 important as these sorts of products, vaccines and
18 cellular products in general can be modified and
19 improved in how they're made. They can be modified
20 and extended in how they are used.

21 And in order that not every modification
22 requires randomized controlled clinical trials,
23 understanding correlates of efficacy will be
24 critical.

S A G CORP.

1 To reach these ends then, it's
2 critically important early in development to
3 identify relevant immune effect or arms that are
4 relevant to the intended mechanism of action and
5 thus likely to correlate with or predict benefit,
6 and to identify immune response measures which can
7 characterize that effect or arm, and which can be
8 performed reliably and reproducibly across time in a
9 patient, across patients in a center, and
10 importantly also, across sites in multi-center
11 trials which are likely to be necessary.

12 So with that, emphasizing, I think, the
13 critical importance of these topics, it's my
14 pleasure to introduce our first speaker, Dr. Steven
15 Rosenberg of the Cancer Institute and needs little
16 introduction, who will talk about his work in
17 identifying cancer regression antigens and using
18 strategies to target those in tumor vaccines.

19 DR. ROSENBERG: Thank you.

20 In developing cancer vaccines, we need
21 to understand two basic phenomenon. First, what is
22 it we want to immunize against? And, secondly, what
23 is the optimal way to perform those immunizations?

24 And I'd like in the next few moments to
25 talk about our studies, trying to develop at least

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the beginnings of answers to those two questions.
2 What should we be immunizing against in the cancer
3 patient, and how can we best perform those
4 immunizations?

5 In attempting to find the antigens in
6 patients with melanoma, a human tumor that we've
7 used as a model, although as you'll see, we're
8 beginning to extend beyond that diagnosis, we
9 attempted to define the relevant tumor rejection
10 antigens in patients by identifying the genes that
11 encoded what we thought to be the relevant tumor
12 antigens.

13 And those studies were derived from a
14 pilot clinical trial performed here in the clinical
15 center.

16 Can I have the first slide, please?

17 This clinical trial used a kind of cell
18 we had defined in animal models and in humans called
19 tumor infiltrating lymphocyte, cells that we could
20 derive from tumors that in vitro exhibited specific
21 antitumor activity and recognition of tumor
22 antigens.

23 In a trial we administered them to 73
24 patients with metastatic melanoma. About a third of
25 those patients would respond. This was about twice

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the response rate seen with Interleukin-2 alone, and
2 when these cells were administered with Interleukin-
3 2 to patients who had previously not responded to
4 Interleukin 2 therapy, again, about a third of
5 patients responded.

6 And what this clinical trial did is
7 provide us with a cell that was recognizing antigens
8 that when administered to patients, adoptively
9 transferred, were capable of mediating tumor
10 regression.

11 And the question we then asked with the
12 specific subpopulation of TIL cells that were
13 involved in tumor regression, the question we asked
14 was: what was the antigens, what was the chemical
15 nature of the antigens recognized by these
16 particular lymphocytes?

17 And the strategy that we utilized in
18 these studies had four parts:

19 First, to grow tumor infiltrating
20 lymphocytes from patients with cancer and identify
21 the TIL cells that could recognize appropriate
22 antigens in vitro;

23 To administer those TIL to patients, as
24 I've just mentioned, and identify the selected
25 subpopulations that could mediate tumor regression;

S A G CORP.

1 And then utilize those TIL associated
2 with in vivo effects to clone the genes that encoded
3 the antigens they recognized.

4 Now, it was necessary, of course, to
5 then close the loop by utilizing those genes that
6 encoded these putative cancer aggression antigens by
7 evaluating clinical responses in patients after the
8 adoptive transfer of lymphocytes sensitized in vitro
9 specifically to those antigens or to utilize those
10 genes or gene products in the development of cancer
11 vaccines to see if, in fact, those selective immune
12 responses could translate into tumor regression in
13 patients.

14 Well, in beginning those efforts, we
15 began with a patient shown here who had multiple
16 tumor nodules. He received his TIL, along with IL-
17 2, and showed a dramatic regression not only of
18 these tumor nodules, but also intraperitoneal tumor
19 as well.

20 This was patient 1200, and Dr. Utaka
21 Kawakani asked what were the antigens that were
22 recognized by this TIL that resulted in this tumor
23 regression, and these were the first examples of our
24 efforts in this direction.

1 I won't go into it in much detail
2 because it's been published, but in these first
3 series of experiments, two antigens, GP-100 and
4 MART-1, standing for melanoma antigen recognized by
5 T cells, were identified by TIL associated with
6 tumor regression.

7 The GP-100 molecule, previously known as
8 a molecule recognized by a monoclonal antibody, HMB-
9 45, but unknown as a T cell antigen; MART-1
10 previously unknown in any gene or protein data bank,
11 but the surprising observation was that both of
12 these proteins were normal, nonmutated proteins
13 present in melanocytes and melanoma cells, and in
14 fact, the Northern Blot studies that were performed
15 demonstrated the expression of these proteins only
16 in melanomas, some in retina, no other normal
17 tissues with the exception of melanocytes.

18 As we began further to define the nature
19 of these reactivities, some additional surprising
20 findings revealed themselves of 29 HLA-A2 restricted
21 TIL that recognized shared melanoma antigens from
22 patients, and this represents over 50 percent of all
23 HLA-A2 TIL.

24 Twenty-one of these 29 that recognized
25 specific melanoma antigens recognized the MART-1

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antigen that we defined, and all of these 21 TIL
2 recognized the exact same nine amino acid peptide,
3 this AAGIGILTV, and no other peptide in this
4 molecule.

5 Thirteen of the TIL recognized GP-100,
6 five different epitopes. We've now actually
7 identified an additional five, and they were
8 heterogeneous. Eight reacted with both of these.

9 We have two TIL that have recognized
10 tyrosinase, and those represent the three antigens
11 recognized by all of the TIL that we've identified
12 from melanoma patients.

13 It, therefore, appeared that many
14 melanoma antigens were normal, nonmutated self-
15 proteins presented on the surface of melanoma cells
16 in normal melanocytes, and somehow the growth of the
17 melanoma resulted in break of tolerance to these
18 normal differentiation proteins because, of course,
19 the TIL that were used to identify them came from
20 the growing tumors of patients.

21 Now, this explains something which had
22 mystified us for the previous ten years of our
23 immunotherapy experience as exemplified by this
24 patient, who is one of the patients who had multiple

1 melanoma deposits following resection of a primary
2 lesion.

3 He underwent a complete regression of
4 these deposits. That's just some melanin staining
5 in the skin, and he showed us as the melanoma
6 deposits were disappearing this vitiligo
7 depigmentation, which on biopsy showed complete
8 destruction of melanocytes in this area.

9 This then led us back to our
10 immunotherapy clinic to look prospectively at all
11 patients that were seen in our clinic at least one
12 year after receiving Interleukin-2, and in none of
13 104 patients did we see, with renal cell cancer, did
14 we see vitiligo. We saw it in 12 of 73 melanoma
15 patients, again suggesting that somehow the growth
16 of the melanoma had sensitized the patients to
17 reactivity against these differentiation antigens
18 that led to the vitiligo.

19 But more compellingly, if we looked at
20 the melanoma patients, all of the vitiligo occurred
21 in those patients showing objective clinical
22 responses, either complete or partial regressions,
23 and no vitiligo seen in nonresponding patients,
24 providing what I think is compelling circumstantial
25 evidence that it is the reactivity against the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 differentiation antigens, the same antigens that are
2 causing the response to the melanoma, that are also
3 resulting in vitiligo.

4 Now, this leads to a conjecture which
5 could potentially lead us to extend these
6 observations to other tumors, and we're very
7 vigorously pursuing this area.

8 If normal tissue specific
9 differentiation proteins from melanocytes expressed
10 on tumors can serve as tumor antigens, well,
11 virtually every organ in the body contains unique
12 proteins unique to that organ. Perhaps tissue
13 specific proteins in tumors derived from other
14 nonessential organs could serve as immunotherapy
15 targets. After all, the loss of the epithelial
16 cells of organs, such as the thyroid, the ovary, the
17 testes, the breast, and the prostate, would be a
18 very small price to pay for the destruction of the
19 tumors that arose from those organs and continued to
20 express those differentiation proteins.

21 Well, that was only part of the story.
22 I'd like to present just two additional examples
23 that demonstrate not only additional tumor antigens,
24 but other biologic principles involved in how tumors
25 present antigens to the immune system.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 A 26 year old woman who had dozens of
2 cutaneous metastases, melanoma in both tonsils, soft
3 palate, lung underwent complete regression of her
4 melanoma when treated with TIL cells and IL-2, and
5 when Paul Robbins studied TIL-888, TIL associated
6 with the complete regression in that patient, and
7 another TIL, TIL-1290 that was derived from another
8 lesion in that patient, he identified the beta
9 ketenin (phonetic) molecule as the gene that was
10 encoding the protein recognized by this TIL.

11 The base and amino acid sequence,
12 however, revealed a single C to T mutation which
13 resulted in a serine to phenylalanine mutation
14 switch that resulted in a nine amino acid peptide
15 ending in this phenylalanine that accounted for all
16 of the reactivity of this TIL.

17 And so here's a case where a mutation in
18 a normal protein resulted in the generation of a
19 tumor antigen, and when Dr. Robbins looked at the
20 normal sequence compared to the mutated sequence,
21 there was a one million-fold difference in
22 recognition by TIL from this patient.

23 Beta catenin, of course, a protein that
24 reacts with the APC tumor suppressor gene product

S A G CORP.

1 and is quite important probably in the malignant
2 phenotype of that patient.

3 And so a second principle of the
4 degeneration of tumor antigens in patients is not
5 only differentiation antigens, but mutation of
6 normal cell products.

7 Well, the final example I'll discuss is
8 this patient 586, who studied by Dr. Ron Fu Wong,
9 who underwent a partial regression when receiving
10 those TIL plus IL-2. Dr. Wong identified the gene
11 sequence of the protein recognized by this TIL.

12 It turned out to be a protein TRP-1,
13 another differentiation protein, but quite
14 surprisingly, none of the peptides from the normal
15 protein conferred reactivity to TIL 586. It was
16 only when Dr. Wong then explored the third open
17 reading frame that we found a 21 amino acid,
18 probably nonsense polypeptide, encoded by the third
19 open reading frame. So this is now an epitope
20 coming from not the protein encoded by the normal
21 gene, but by that same gene sequence, and it was the
22 first nine amino acids from this 21 amino acid
23 polypeptide that conferred the reactivity to TIL 586
24 starting in this methionine.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, clones of TIL 586 identified TRP-2,
2 another differentiation protein as a protein
3 recognized by this heterogeneous TIL in this patient
4 that underwent a good partial regression, a second
5 antigen.

6 But a third clone from this patient, all
7 derived from the same TIL population, demonstrated a
8 clone that now reacted with that patient's melanoma
9 restricted by HLA-A31, not A31 negative melanomas,
10 but now for the first time this TIL could recognize
11 HLA-A31 breast cancers, but not normal cells from
12 that same patient.

13 And so this patient was developing
14 reactivity not only against melanoma antigens, but
15 antigens now shared more broadly on other tumors,
16 and when Dr. Wong identified this gene, it encoded
17 the NYESO-1 as a gene product, at that point known
18 only to be reactive with antibody, but not with T
19 cells, as the antigen recognized by this patient's
20 TIL.

21 And, in fact, two different epitopes on
22 the ESO antigen were recognized by two different
23 clones.

24 Interestingly, this antigen is expressed
25 in about 25 percent of breast cancers, prostate

S A G CORP.

1 cancers, even more non-small cell lung cancers, and
2 the 10-amino acid epitope was identified as well as
3 a second epitope recognized by another clone in an
4 alternative open reading frame.

5 And so we have to look not only at the
6 known protein products of the genes that encode
7 tumor antigens, but also their alternative open
8 reading frames, as well.

9 And so as we summarize this patient,
10 this patient's TIL, isolated from a growing tumor of
11 that individual, recognized three different
12 antigens, TRP-1, TRP-2, and two epitopes of the ESO
13 antigen, as well. Most patients with melanoma are
14 probably recognizing not only a single, but perhaps
15 even multiple antigens, and we have several examples
16 of this in our own patients.

17 Well, we've now described eight
18 different antigens. I won't go into others, and
19 there are others that are being found in the
20 laboratory that recognize not only differentiation
21 antigens, intronic sequences, mutations, alternative
22 open reading frames, as well as some that are shared
23 on other melanomas, and there are other antigens to
24 be discovered as well.

S A G CORP.

1 It's quite clear that if you have a T
2 cell that recognizes an antigen, you can clone that
3 gene, and in this summary of 135 different TIL
4 restricted by HLA-A1, 2, 3, 24 and 31, there are
5 still TIL that we have that have antigens that are
6 not encompassed by any of the genes and gene
7 products we know about, and these are being cloned,
8 in fact, a new antigen just found by Dr. Mammero
9 Hirata in the last week, and so finding of these
10 Class I restricted antigens is something which is
11 vigorously ongoing.

12 Now, we've talked only about melanoma,
13 and in fact, for tumors other than melanoma, it's
14 very hard to raise Class I restricted CTL that
15 recognize tumor antigens. However, one can generate
16 from about ten percent of breast cancer patients CD-
17 4 positive TIL that recognize tumor antigens
18 uniquely, and this was published by Dr.
19 Schwartzentruber and Dr. Topalian.

20 TIL cells from a breast cancer patient
21 recognizing that breast cancer, but not normal cells
22 from that patients or other tumors, and Dr. Dadmars
23 along with Dr. Schwartzentruber have described from
24 about a quarter of ovarian cancer patients CD-4
25 positive TIL that recognize unique antigens.

S A G CORP.

1 As you can see here, the autologous
2 tumor being recognized in each of these experiments,
3 but not autologous normal tissues or other tumors.

4 But the problem of recognizing the genes
5 encoded by CD-4 cells is a far more challenging
6 problem and one that up until very recently we've
7 had no method for identification, and the reason for
8 the difficulty comes from an understanding of how
9 antigens are processed.

10 Antigens recognized on Class I by CD-8
11 positive cells are the result of the processing of
12 intracellular proteins, which are cleaved and
13 transported through the ER to the surface of the
14 cell. Whereas Class II recognized antigens are
15 exogenous antigens, in general brought into the
16 cell, into different subcellular compartments,
17 endosomes, that are then attached to Class II
18 molecules and brought to the surface.

19 And if we try to use the classic
20 expression cloning techniques that we've used, one
21 cannot just simply introduce a gene into the cell
22 and expect it to enter the Class II pathway.
23 Somehow methods have to be developed to bring these
24 endogenous proteins specifically into the Class II
25 pathway.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And in the past several months work,
2 again, by Dr. Ron Fu Wong has generated a general
3 method for the cloning of genes expressed by Class
4 II antigens by developing CDNA libraries with the
5 vector encoding and variant chain sequences which
6 target these transfected genes to the Class II
7 pathway and doing that in 293 cells that are highly
8 transfectable, that have been engineered to express
9 the appropriate Class II DMA, DMB, and in varying
10 chain molecules that are necessary for gene cloning.

11 And so utilizing now this new technique
12 just being submitted for publication as we speak,
13 using CD-4 positive cells that recognize a unique
14 melanoma antigen restricted by HLADR, the gene
15 cloning techniques were used, as I've just
16 mentioned, by screening CDNA libraries, and this now
17 first cloning technique identified a gene, a quite
18 unique gene, recognized by this TIL, restricted by
19 Class II, which is a fusion product of the LDL
20 receptor gene on Chromosome 19 with a fructose
21 transferase gene on that same chromosome, and the
22 peptide epitope has been identified as well.

23 In other words, the gene for the LDL
24 receptor, the gene for the fructose transferase as a
25 result of a chromosome inversion gives rise to a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 fusion product, probably a recombination between the
2 two ends of this chromosome that gave rise to the
3 gene recognized by this TIL.

4 A study of the individual amino acid
5 epitopes has also identified the particular peptide
6 epitope recognized, which is in this fusion product
7 of the ligand binding repeats of the LDL receptor,
8 as well as the fructose transferase gene, now as a
9 result of a chromosomal rearrangement being read in
10 the reverse direction, a nonsense sequence that
11 gives rise to the peptide epitope.

12 And I've mentioned this just to
13 illustrate again we know there are so many
14 chromosomal abnormalities and mutations that occur
15 in tumor cells that have an opportunity to give rise
16 to mutations. This is the first antigen recognized
17 by this approach. Dr. Wong has now identified a
18 second T cell antigen and the epitope derived from
19 the CDC-27 gene, and my suspicion is now we'll be
20 able, using this general technique, to identify CD-4
21 restricted antigens in a variety of tumors as well.

22 Well, we understand a lot about the
23 molecular nature of these antigens, but of course,
24 the goal of these studies is to use them to develop

S A G CORP.

1 therapeutic approaches to these treatments to turn
2 this theory into performance.

3 And as we engage in this effort, there
4 are, of course, two main issues to deal with. One,
5 the passive transfers, we've talked about passive
6 immunotherapy or active immunotherapy, the
7 development of cancer vaccines.

8 A daunting problem as we attempt to
9 translate this into human trials, the number of
10 possibilities are staggering. We have multiple
11 antigens, multiple ways to immunize with peptide,
12 protein, DNA, a variety of viruses, multiple
13 adjuvants, routes of administration, and obviously
14 very careful selections have to be made.

15 Based on animal studies, Dr. Nicholas
16 Restifo in the Surgery Branch and his group have,
17 over the years performed extensive analyses
18 attempting to determine the general principles in
19 animal models to use for human vaccination. I won't
20 present any of his data, except to present the
21 principles that we've used to try to determine how
22 we approach this.

23 In general, based on animal models,
24 immunizations most effective in generating reactive
25 T cells and most therapeutically effective as we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 looked at multiple cytokines, IL-2 and IL-12 turned
2 out to be the most effective analogues to use with
3 immunization.

4 The more immunogen we give, the better.
5 Extending the length between immunizations seems to
6 be important, as well as repeated boost
7 immunizations with different vehicles containing the
8 same antigen to avoid immunization to the vehicle
9 itself.

10 Now, we've now treated over 280 patients
11 with these different approaches, using adenovirus
12 that encodes MART-1 or GP-100, supplied to us by the
13 Genzyme Corporation, very close collaborations with
14 the Thereon Corporation, providing to us a GMP
15 virus, vaccinia fowl pox virus encoding these
16 genes, and studies with these products are very much
17 ongoing.

18 I'd like, however, in the remaining few
19 minutes to talk about our peptide studies because as
20 of right now, these appears to be the best ways to
21 immunize humans against these gene products,
22 although the viral studies are very actively being
23 pursued.

24 One of the problems we believe we have
25 in some of these viral studies that attempt to use

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 viruses for immunogens is the problem with the fact
2 that most humans have neutralizing antibodies
3 against adenovirus, and we need to find ways to
4 overcome this.

5 We're now looking at ways to use
6 adenovirus to infect dendritic cells. Similarly,
7 with pox viruses, patients have high titers of
8 antibody against vaccinia, but not against fowl pox,
9 and so we're emphasizing in our current study the
10 intravenous administration of very high levels of
11 anti-fowl pox antibody to immunize patients in these
12 studies.

13 The most successful immunizations that
14 we've achieved thus far, however, have been in
15 patients receiving peptides, the immunodominant
16 peptides from these proteins, and, in general, our
17 best results have been obtained when we use peptides
18 that have amino acid modifications that improve the
19 binding of these peptides to HLA molecules.

20 Each of the immunodominant peptides we
21 identified is a relatively poor binder, an
22 intermediate binder to HLA-A2 for the antigens that
23 are restricted by A2, and Dr. Miriah Parkhurst, by
24 looking at hundreds of different modifications, has
25 identified peptides with specific amino acid

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 modifications at the anchor residues of the peptides
2 that can increase binding ten to 50-fold.

3 We've tended to concentrate on the GP-
4 100 molecule, and in studies in which we've
5 immunized patients with a variety of different
6 peptides, a nine amino acid peptide beginning at
7 amino acid position 209 that contains a methionine
8 substitution that increase binding to HLA-A2.

9 And when we perform those immunizations,
10 we can in virtually every patient get a strong
11 reactivity not only against the peptide, but against
12 HLA-A2 positive tumors, and an example of one such
13 assay is the following.

14 If we immunize with the 209-2M peptide
15 and incomplete Freund's adjuvant every three weeks
16 with two immunizations and now just take PBMC from
17 patients, mix with peptide, and seven to 12 days
18 later simply look for reactivity against the peptide
19 or tumor, we do not see it in patients prior to
20 immunization that are sensitized with 2M, exposed to
21 2M peptide in vitro, but now tested against the
22 native peptide. No reactivity, no reactivity based
23 on gamma interferon release against tumors.

24 The patient is highly immunocompetent,
25 can react to flu, but after two in vivo

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunizations, when we now look at the simple ten-
2 day assay in vitro, we get very high reactivity
3 against the immunizing peptide that also translates
4 into very high reactivity against the A2 positive
5 tumors, but not A2 negative tumors.

6 When we immunized eight patients with
7 the unmodified peptide, only two showed evidence of
8 weak immunization. When we used the modified
9 peptide, and I won't go into more detail because
10 we've just recently published this a few months ago,
11 ten of 11 patients showed strong reactivity to the
12 immunizing peptide, as well as to tumor. And we
13 have, therefore, concentrated our efforts on these
14 modified peptides as cancer vaccines.

15 One can by a whole variety of assays,
16 ELISPOT assays, limiting dilution assays,
17 demonstrate this immunization as well. We can never
18 detect by limiting dilution reactivity at the limits
19 of the assay, one in 30,000 frequency immune T cells
20 against peptide or tumor prior to immunization.
21 However, post immunization reactivities are in the
22 one to three to 6,000 range. This would be the same
23 precursor frequency that one would have after
24 clearing the body of a natural flu infection.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And so it is possible to highly immunize
2 patients. The problem is the in the face of all of
3 these circulating precursors, we saw no true
4 objective responses. We saw individual tumors
5 disappear, but no patient that showed the strict
6 criteria of an objective response until we then
7 added Interleukin-2 to those individual peptide
8 immunizations, and then in our pilot trial of 31
9 patients, 42 percent showed an objective regression
10 compared to the 15 percent or so that we normally
11 see with IL-2 alone.

12 We saw no increased activity when we
13 gave these peptides with IL-12 or GM-CSF.

14 There's not a randomized trial, but if
15 we look at 182 patients that we treated with IL-2,
16 our response rate was 15 percent. If we look at
17 patients who are simultaneously being treated with
18 recombinant virus along with the same IL-2 regimen,
19 12 percent. This 42 percent appears to be up to
20 three times higher as a result of the 2M peptide
21 vaccination, but this requires a randomized trial to
22 see if this is, in fact, correct.

23 The Cytokine Working Group is looking at
24 209-2M in conjunction with IL-2 to treat patients,
25 and a Surgery Branch fellow extramural trial being

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 run by Dr. Schwartzentruber should be initiated
2 soon, which will compare Interleukin-2 treatment to
3 Interleukin-2 treatment with this peptide to see if,
4 in fact, that provides effectiveness.

5 I'd like to show just some anecdotes,
6 realizing they are anecdotes, that demonstrate some
7 important principles of this treatment.

8 Patients that were treated in this trial
9 showed with peptide alone, showed inflammatory areas
10 around their subcutaneous deposits and many
11 disappeared, but some would appear at the same time,
12 and we saw no objective responses to that.

13 Patients that did have responses to the
14 2M peptide plus IL-2, such as this patient who had
15 hundreds, if not thousands, of lesions, including
16 ones growing out of her cornea, had a complete
17 regression, and as these lesions disappeared, so too
18 were destroyed the normal melanocytes surrounding
19 these lesions.

20 I'll finish in another minute and a
21 half.

22 (Laughter.)

23 DR. ROSENBERG: For the first time we
24 saw lesions in the brain disappear, something we had

1 never seen with Interleukin-2 alone, as we see with
2 these two lesions showing this shrinkage, as well.

3 And in this patient, this brain
4 metastasis has disappeared completely.

5 I would close by just mentioning the
6 trial we now have ongoing, and that is instead of
7 using a single peptide for immunization, we're
8 immunizing with four different peptides, two from
9 the GP-100 molecule, one from MART-1 and one from
10 tyrosinase, and now for the first time in our first
11 16 patients treated with these four peptides in the
12 absence of IL-2, we're seeing responses to peptide
13 alone, such as in this patient now who's had a quite
14 extraordinary response of these lesions to peptide
15 alone in the absence of IL-2. You can see
16 disappearance of these, as well as in the posterior
17 thigh.

18 And in this final patient I'll show
19 receiving peptide alone who had lung lesion go away;
20 liver lesions disappear with these four peptides;
21 and intraperitoneal lesion as well as this large
22 intramuscular lesion in the thigh. This patient
23 went on to a complete response and then developed
24 vitiligo as these lesions were disappearing with
25 this peptide immunization.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Can I have the lights on please?

2 And so we're continuing our studies
3 attempting to immunize not only against peptide, but
4 against viruses encoding specific molecules that
5 hopefully can be developed as successful targets for
6 immunization.

7 Well, thank you for your very kind
8 attention.

9 (Applause.)

10 DR. SIEGEL: Thank you.

11 There's been a minor change in program.
12 The next two speakers have switched positions. So
13 our next speaker and last speaker before lunch break
14 -- is that correct? -- is Dr. Jeffrey Weber of the
15 University of Southern California and the Norris
16 Comprehensive Cancer Center speaking about his
17 experience with immune responses to peptide pulsed
18 vaccines.

19 Thank you, Dr. Weber.

20 DR. WEBER: Boy, talk about a tough act
21 to follow.

22 (Laughter.)

23 DR. WEBER: Based on the immune tour de
24 force that Steve talked about, as well as very
25 eloquent data generated by Cass Malief and Tiery

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Boone, I'm going to talk to you a little bit about
2 some peptide trials that I've done at USC-Norris.

3 And if we can have the first slide.

4 I'm going to talk to you about tumor
5 antigen peptide based therapy both in melanoma and
6 in HPV induced preneoplasia, and basically there are
7 a lot of good and bad things about peptides, some of
8 which Steve has already alluded to.

9 The good news is that peptide vaccines
10 for cancer, well, they're not toxic. They're cheap.
11 Clearly he's shown and others have shown that they
12 can induce immune and clinical responses.

13 The bad news is that not all patients
14 have the correct haplotype if you have a single or
15 even several peptides. Clinical responses in
16 patients with metastatic disease, mostly melanoma,
17 are uncommon. The ugly news is that
18 there's clear evidence that there is immunoselection
19 that occurs in vivo, and that can cause resistance,
20 and Cass Malief and Martin Cast have shown that some
21 peptides can even be tolerogenic.

22 The hope is that multiple peptides with
23 potent adjuvants and potent cytokines will be
24 effective.

S A G CORP.

1 As we've heard, MART-1, GP-100, and
2 tyrosinase are all found in melanomas, and they are
3 neoantigens. They are normal antigens found on
4 melanocytes.

5 You can induce immune responses to these
6 normal antigens in patients with metastatic or
7 resected disease. MART-1 specific T cells are
8 prominently found in blood or in tumor infiltrating
9 lymphocytes, and as Steve Rosenberg implied, GP-100
10 TIL have been found to be therapeutical.

11 What we did at USC-Norris was to take
12 the MART-1-27 to 35 nonomer, that peptide with
13 incomplete Freund's adjuvant, and we took the
14 nonomer which has been found to be an immunogenic
15 peptide in vitro in work done by a number of
16 investigators. It's also been found to be
17 immunogenic in vivo. It's been found to be well
18 tolerated.

19 And the question that we asked was:
20 will patients with resected Stage III and IV
21 melanoma at a high risk of relapse mount an immune
22 response to MART-1, and more importantly, will the
23 immune response correlate with time to relapse as a
24 clinical endpoint?

1 The schema was very straightforward. It
2 as a Phase I trial with cohorts of three or more
3 patients who got 300, 1,000, or 2,000 micrograms of
4 the peptide with incomplete Freund's adjuvants.

5 We gave them four injections three weeks
6 apart subcutaneously, and the objectives of this
7 typical Phase I trial were toxicity and did we
8 generate immune responses.

9 We also skin tested with peptides. We
10 did leukophoreses on all the patients to collect
11 their peripheral bloods, and that was done prior to
12 and after the series of vaccinations.

13 This was not toxic, as one might expect.
14 We saw very transient, non-therapy related
15 thrombocytopenia in one patient. The same patient
16 also had a low white count. These were trivial
17 toxicities. The vast majority of patients had some
18 local pain and granuloma formation, but both the
19 investigator, i.e., me, and the patients agreed that
20 this was therapy that was well tolerated.

21 In this slide, which is probably a
22 little difficult to read at a distance, it shows the
23 immune assays that we did, and these immune assays
24 are based on multiple restimulations of the
25 patient's peripheral blood mononuclear cells three

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 times, done three weeks in a row, and then a
2 cytokine release assay using gamma interferon ELISA
3 as the readout was used as the immune response
4 indicator.

5 And it shows pre and post, pre and post
6 in order for 22 patients that we had phoresis
7 samples on. We treated 25 patients. Three of them
8 could not be phoresed due to access problems, and it
9 shows in yellow -- and this just shows T-2 cells
10 that are not pulsed with peptide; T-2 targets that
11 are pulsed with MART-1; or 624 MEL cells that
12 express the MART-1 antigen and are HLA-A2 positive.

13 It shows that you get boosting that is
14 an increase of at least 100 picograms per mL of
15 gamma interferon post compared to pre in ten, if you
16 can count them in yellow, out of the 25 or out of
17 these 22 patients.

18 What we also did was to do cross-
19 specificity assays, which I didn't show on that
20 slide. It would have been much too complicated, and
21 what we did is we would take the samples of blood
22 from these patients after vaccination, and we would
23 stimulate them with either the flu matrix peptide,
24 which virtually all of them should respond to, or
25 with the MART peptide, and then we would crisscross

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 them and ask whether there was reactivity by the flu
2 stimulated cells to MART, which there should not be,
3 and by the MART stimulated cells to flu, which there
4 should not be, but the flu stimulated cells should
5 show a response pre and post. Hopefully the MART
6 should show an augmentation.

7 And in this patient, who was an immune
8 responder, there's no question that in the cross-
9 hatched areas there was a flu specific response pre
10 and post. In the flu stimulated cells there was a
11 trivial MART response. Pre, there was no MART
12 response against MART stimulated cells, but a very
13 nice response here post vaccination.

14 In a patient who was not a responder,
15 nice looking flu reactivity, suggesting that the
16 patient was immune competent against flu, but no
17 evidence of any reactivity against MART, suggesting
18 that the patient was a nonresponder.

19 And these are the kinds of assays we've
20 performed for all of the so-called responders and
21 for most of the nonresponders.

22 In addition, in patients who have
23 cytokine release also have chromium release, again,
24 much higher backgrounds. This just shows post MART

1 specific cytolysis. This is the post control, pre,
2 pre. So there was some augmentation here.

3 Another patient who was a responder by
4 cytokine release had post MART-1 vaccination,
5 increased cytolysis here compared with control, and
6 again, this is pre compared with control. So if you
7 subtract this from this, obviously there's almost no
8 background, and there's some significant activity,
9 although with a background against a nonspecific
10 target, post.

11 So those are the kinds of data we
12 generated, and the question was: was there any
13 evidence in this very small trial of only 25
14 patients of whom 22 actually had assays available;
15 was there any evidence that there was clinical
16 benefit that correlated with the immune response
17 indicator?

18 The median follow-up is 16 months. Nine
19 of the 25 patients who had Stage III and IV disease
20 have relapsed. Three have died.

21 For those patients who had an ELISA
22 response greater than 100 picograms per mL as a
23 continuous variable, we found that there was a P
24 value for association or correlation of relapse free

1 interval, or relapse resurvival, with a P value of
2 .003 based on a Cox proportionate hazard model.

3 And, again, I don't mean to overlay
4 this. It's a very small trial. We only had 22
5 patients with immune response data, but the bottom
6 line is if you had a very good ELISA response, those
7 are the patients who are alive NED. All of the
8 relapsers had either no or a lesser response, and
9 that's just a hint that there may be some value to
10 this immune response assay.

11 Conclusions. Immune responses by ELISA
12 in ten of 22 patients. We saw 12 of 22 who had
13 positive DTH for the MART peptide, but only three of
14 11 correlated with the ELISA.

15 Meaning of the DTH to me was unclear.
16 Again, nine of 25 relapse with three deaths. The
17 toxicity was minimal. The correlation, there was
18 certainly a hint of some beneficial effect, but that
19 remains to be seen in follow-up trials.

20 Let me quickly switch gears, and then
21 we'll go on to an important question based on some
22 data we've heard before, and again, a strong
23 rationale to be asking questions about peptide
24 pulsed dendritic cells as an immunogen was that data
25 from a variety of labs, including Mike Lotze whom we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 heard yesterday, suggested that dendritic cells were
2 potent antigen presenting cells.

3 There is also data from a number of labs
4 suggesting that you could grow dendritic cells in
5 large numbers derived from peripheral blood
6 mononuclear cells by the expedience of using IL-4
7 and GM-CSF, setting up a hypothesis that potentially
8 tumor antigen peptide pulsed dendritic cells could
9 induce potent antitumor immune responses and
10 hopefully a clinically beneficial effect.

11 So our goal in a trial that started
12 about a year ago was to treat up to 20 patients with
13 Stage IV melanoma with measurable disease with up to
14 100 million dendritic cells derived from peripheral
15 blood mononuclear cells, pulsed with multiple
16 peptides from melanoma antigens.

17 We set out in the classic Phase I style
18 to evaluate the toxicity, whether there were immune
19 responses, and since we chose patients deliberately
20 who had some measurable disease, we would be able to
21 look at clinical responses.

22 And the overall goal was to refine
23 techniques for the generation of large numbers of
24 potent immune stimulating dendritic cells.

S A G CORP.

1 Demographics. So far 11 patients
2 treated. We just accrued the 12th, and that's about
3 a patient a month over the last year. Four of them
4 have actually had four cycles of dendritic cells.
5 Typical patients for our population, five women and
6 six men.

7 Everyone had visceral disease. They
8 were all HMB-45 positive because that's the antigen
9 that is actually -- that's the antibody that
10 actually recognizes the GP-100 antigen.

11 Several of them actually had never had
12 systemic treatment, and two of them actually had
13 ocular or choroidal melanoma primaries.

14 The schema, very straightforward. As
15 Steve discussed, we used the GP-100 210M substituted
16 peptide and the tyrosinase 370D substituted peptide,
17 which are found to be immunogenic.

18 This was a Phase I trial with two
19 injections of dendritic cells given intravenously
20 two weeks apart, starting at ten to the seventh
21 cells, moving on to ten to the eighth or, if
22 possible, if practical, three times ten to the
23 eighth.

24 The endpoints initially were toxicity
25 and immune response. We did a leukophoresis with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 skin testing just prior to the first infusion, and
2 then four weeks after the second infusion, and
3 patients, if they responded, we asked if they could
4 be retreated.

5 And again, they were not toxic as one
6 might expect. No irreversible Grade III and no
7 Grade IV toxicity. No change in any hematologic or
8 chemical parameter related to therapy.

9 One of the patients who got three times
10 ten to the seventh cells had some pretty impressive
11 myalgias and arthralgias for several days after both
12 of the infusions.

13 One patient had high fevers and fatigue.
14 We called that transient Grade III toxicity, but
15 overall the investigator and the patients agreed
16 that these peptide pulsed dendritic cells were well
17 tolerated in general.

18 The schema. We ficolled the
19 leukophoresed PBMC. They were adhered to plastic as
20 implied by Ralph Steinman and Jacques Banchereau.

21 We then removed the nonadherent cells,
22 and the adherent cells were grown for eight days in
23 AIM-V serumless media with 1,000 units of IL-4 and
24 GM-CSF. Twenty-four hours prior to harvest, we
25 added peptides in separate aliquots to the cells,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and on day nine we harvested the cells, and actually
2 we irradiated the dendritic cells prior to their
3 administration.

4 They were put in a transfer bag with
5 some albumen to stabilize them and intravenously
6 infused over 15 minutes.

7 We did gram and fungal stains. We did
8 the usual QA/QC things. For example, bacterial and
9 fungal cultures were sent as they were infused. We
10 did endotoxin mycoplasma assays in cultures, and we
11 locally developed all of our SOPs and performed this
12 in a dedicated room at our cancer center.

13 And, again, as other people have shown -
14 - I won't harp on it -- in forward and side scatter
15 these are very large cells in general that are HLA-
16 DR positive. If you gate on the large cells,
17 they're predominantly CD-86 positive in our hands;
18 again, DR positive; CD-54 and CD-58 positive.

19 And, again, our cells are somewhere
20 between an immature and a mature dendritic cell
21 because they are relatively CD-83 positive.

22 And again, yields in phenotypes. The
23 bottom line is on the bottom line, and I would just
24 look at the yellow bottom line. Our cells turned

1 out to be across the board about 50 percent
2 dendritic cells.

3 And again, one can argue over what
4 defines a dendritic cell, but it's a cell that we
5 called CD-14 negative, 58 positive, 86 positive, DR
6 positive, and if you average these together, you
7 came up with about a 49 percent purity.

8 The viability of our cells, and this
9 just describes how many we infused, when we made
10 them fresh we then froze an aliquot and infused the
11 frozen and thawed aliquot two weeks later. The
12 viabilities here were 85 to 90 percent. Here the
13 viabilities were somewhat less. They were, of
14 course, frozen and thawed cells.

15 And the bottom line in terms of the
16 immune responses, this is an ongoing trial and so
17 far we've looked at five patients. Peter Lee, who
18 will talk later, is looking at the tetramer assays.

19 We're doing the same kind of
20 restimulated PBMC cytokine release assay that was
21 done for the MART trial. So far only one of five
22 patients has had any evidence of immune reactivity.

23 Again, cytokine release against flu,
24 meaning that the patient is flu competent, against
25 GP-100 suggesting that there is evidence of boosting

S A G CORP.

1 against GP-100 pre as opposed to post, and somewhat
2 weaker boosted immunity against tyrosinase, again,
3 pre as opposed to post, and these are all T-2 cells
4 pulsed with the appropriate peptides, either none,
5 flu, GP-100 or tyrosinase.

6 This turned out to be a patient who has
7 had evidence of tumor aggression, by the way, and
8 continues to be treated, and this just shows you the
9 usual anecdotal patient. The fifth patient or sixth
10 patient in the trial actually had multiple pulmonary
11 nodules and was a partial responder after cycle one
12 of the dendritic cells. That just shows a pulmonary
13 nodule on the left side going away, gone.

14 She also had a very small nodule down
15 here, difficult to make out, there, there, gone.
16 That, by the way, for the nonclinicians is the top
17 of the right diaphragm.

18 The patient also had another pleural
19 plaque that was about four centimeters that
20 disappeared after the second infusion, and this is a
21 patient who actually seems to be a complete
22 responder after the second cycle of dendritic cells.

23 And, of course, in answer to the usual
24 question, it's a patient whose cells we have
25 collected both pre, post cycle one, post cycle two.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I honestly will not know the answer to the immune
2 assays for another week or two.

3 This is another patient, actually the
4 first patient we treated, who had very indistinct
5 looking liver lesions that were biopsied positive
6 for melanoma. He had multiple lesions. Most of
7 them shrank down significantly. He was about a 48
8 percent regressor. So he just missed being a PR.
9 He was scored as an MR or a minimal response.

10 Clinical results. Eleven patients
11 treated at varying and increasing doses for two
12 injections each. Two patients had minimal tumor
13 regression, not quite meeting the criteria for PR.

14 One CR with multiple lung mets. Eleven
15 are alive, ten with disease. We've done DTH
16 testing. No one has responded to GP-100 and
17 tyrosinase. Everyone has had a positive DTH control
18 to candid. or mumps.

19 We have seen evidence of augmented
20 immunity by ELISA only in one patient. this one
21 patient just happened to be a patient with multiple
22 lung mets. who has had a minimal response.

23 We'll get more data about the patient
24 who had the complete response in the next couple of
25 weeks.

S A G CORP.

1 Our plans for the future involve using
2 CD-40 ligands to now activate the dendritic cells
3 and hopefully make them better antigen presenting
4 cells, which can be shown in vitro.

5 We'll be working with Jim Mule also to
6 utilize low doses of IL-2 as an adjuvant post
7 dendritic cell infusion based on some of the nice
8 work that he's done and has already presented this
9 morning.

10 Now, in the last couple of minutes let
11 me very quickly switch gears and finish up. We've
12 also performed a peptide trial in patients who have
13 HPV induced preneoplasia, and again, as someone
14 mentioned previously, this is an excellent tumor
15 specific antigen as opposed to a neoantigen, which
16 is most of what the melanoma antigens are.

17 HPV-16 and 18 are implicated in the
18 majority of cases of high grade cervical and vulvar
19 interepithelial neoplasia, which is a clear
20 precursor to cervical cancer. As we've already
21 heard, they encode E-6 and E-7 transforming proteins
22 which contain immunodominant peptides restricted to
23 HLA-2.1.

24 There are a number of peptides that
25 Martin Cast, Cass Malief and others have shown can

S A G CORP.

1 be used to generate specific CTL ex vivo. The
2 rationale for our trial is that most cases are 16,
3 18, 31, 33, 45 positive.

4 Since the high grade HPVs were
5 implicated in causing high grade CIN/VIN, then
6 hopefully if we could vaccinate patients using
7 peptides from HPV E-7 we might resolve or prevent
8 viral infection, and that would be a strategy
9 potentially to prevent cervical cancer.

10 And the idea was to immunize against
11 HPV-16 E-7 to generate a T cell response and ask
12 whether we could eliminate the virus.

13 And, again, very simple schema. We
14 chose women with high grade CIN or VIN, which is
15 vulvar interepithelial neoplasia. They had to be
16 HPV-16 positive by a sensitive PCR assay, and of
17 course, HLA-2 positive.

18 We gave four doses of an HPV E-7 12 to
19 20 peptide vaccine with incomplete Freund's adjuvant
20 prior to their definitive therapy for their CIN/VIN.
21 So we delayed their definitive therapy by four
22 months, and we gave doses at 100, 300, 1,000, and
23 2,000 micrograms every three weeks times four.

24 We actually had, courtesy of the NIH,
25 the E-7 86 to 93 lipopeptide available, and that

S A G CORP.

1 began to be added after patient number 11, and,
2 again, now we have a clinical endpoint or at least a
3 clinical surrogate. We have disappearance of virus
4 as an endpoint. We have again the familiar immune
5 CTL response assay, and now we have another clinical
6 endpoint, regression of dysplastic lesions by
7 biopsy.

8 And we've seen, again, minimal toxicity,
9 one patient with local pain. It's really been
10 again, according to investigator and patients, very
11 well tolerated vaccine therapy.

12 And, again, these are the immunologic
13 assays. We've actually treated more patients. It's
14 really more of the same. So I only show you the
15 kinds of cytokine release assays that I showed you
16 before. They're grouped in pre/post pairs,
17 pre/post, pre/post.

18 If you look at this column here, it just
19 shows the flu. Virtually all of the patients were
20 flu competent.

21 If you look at this column, and I won't
22 belabor the point, it shows that of the first ten,
23 six of them had evidence of boosted immunity.
24 Typical patient here, here, et cetera.

S A G CORP.

1 We've done 12 patients' immune assays.
2 Seven of the first 12 had evidence of boosted
3 immunity, but to end up what we found is that when
4 you look at viral clearance, there was not a clear
5 correlation between the immune response assays and
6 the clearing of virus.

7 There is also not a clear correlation
8 between the immune response assays and pathologic
9 clearing of the lesions which occurred in three of
10 the patients.

11 To our surprise, we sent PBMC to Martin
12 Cast and found again, surprisingly, that TCR zeta
13 chain expression was severely reduced in the PBMC of
14 these patients, and again, a very surprising
15 finding.

16 Results and conclusions from this trial
17 to end up. So far we've treated 15 patients. We
18 just added 16 and 17 this past week. Three out of
19 12 have complete disappearance of their lesion.
20 Seven out of 12 had increased E-7 specific immunity
21 by chromium, and we've confirmed this or by cytokine
22 and we've confirmed this with chromium release
23 assays.

24 Seven of the 12 had disappearance of the
25 virus by PCR assays for up to six months. There was

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 no clear-cut correlation between the disappearance
2 of virus, the disappearance of the lesion and these
3 immune response assays. It's not been toxic, and no
4 one has progressed to invasive disease, which is an
5 important thing to measure.

6 Conclusions overall based on snapshots
7 from three clinical trials. Yes, you can measure
8 boosted antigen specific immunity by doing cytokine
9 release assays. These are very difficult assays to
10 do. They're labor intensive. They're hard to
11 reproducibly quantitate.

12 There's a smidgen of evidence from the
13 initial MART trial that there's a correlation
14 between the post vaccine gamma interferon release as
15 a continuous variable and the favorable clinical
16 effect of relapse resurvival.

17 This is not an assay that's ready for
18 prime time. I think the overall overarching point
19 is that we need to come up with a better immune
20 assay where there's a clear correlation to a
21 beneficial clinical effect. I do not think we
22 should develop immune response assays in a vacuum.

23 Finally, let me conclude by thanking my
24 collaborators: my group of technicians, my data
25 managers and research nurses, my GYN oncology

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 colleagues, Mario Sznol from CTEP, Jay Greenblatt,
2 Jan Morgan who made the peptides available, and Mary
3 Ellen Rybak, who's I believe here from Schering who
4 kindly made available IL-4 and GM-CSF for the
5 dendritic cells.

6 Thank you.

7 (Applause.)

8 DR. SIEGEL: Okay. We're now breaking
9 for lunch. I'd like to stick with the time for
10 reconvening at 12:30. So I'd ask you to try to eat
11 expeditiously. We'll start up again on schedule at
12 12:30.

13 (Whereupon, at 11:46 a.m., the workshop
14 was recessed for lunch, to reconvene at
15 12:30 p.m., the same day.)

AFTERNOON SESSION

(12:33 p.m.)

1
2
3 DR. LEE: Good afternoon. I'm Peter
4 Lee, and I'm a Fellow at Mike Davis' lab at
5 Stanford, and it's a real honor for me to be
6 speaking today.

7 In the next few minutes, I'd like to
8 tell you about a new way of studying antigen
9 specific T cells that could be particularly useful
10 for monitoring the immune response to cancer
11 vaccines.

12 In this meeting we've heard a lot of
13 exciting data about different vaccination
14 approaches. However, so far no strategy has given a
15 100 percent response rate, and why some patients
16 respond while others don't to the same immune
17 intervention remains largely a black box.

18 The more that you can understand what's
19 going on inside this black box, the more quickly you
20 can devise better vaccination strategies. The
21 important questions include not only what is the
22 magnitude of the response, the quantity, but also
23 the quality of the response. What are the
24 functional characteristics of the cells? Are the
25 cytolytic in vivo?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 What are the phenotypic characteristics?
2 What surface markers do they express? What
3 cytokines do they secrete? And what is the temporal
4 dynamics of the response? Do the cells come up
5 quickly or disappear quickly or do they come up
6 gradually but stay high?

7 These are parameters that are important
8 for cancer chemotherapy. So it would make sense
9 that they would be important also for cancer
10 immunotherapy.

11 The current methods of getting
12 antigenic T cells mainly include the LDA, limiting
13 dilution analysis, and ELISPOT. Now, these methods
14 mainly address the quantity of the response and not
15 really the quality. They're both sensitive and
16 specific, but they're also labor intensive and time
17 consuming, making it difficult to screen a lot of
18 patient samples at multiple time points.

19 In addition, the LDA detects only those
20 cells that remain proliferative and cytolytic in
21 vitro and, therefore, could miss a lot of cells that
22 for whatever reason don't proliferate in vitro, and
23 in fact, a number of recent studies have shown that
24 the LDA underestimates the true number of antigen
25 specific cells by anywhere between ten to 50-fold.

S A G CORP.

1 Likewise, ELISPOT detects only those
2 cells that secrete the cytokines that you're looking
3 for and, therefore, could miss cells that either
4 secrete cytokines that you didn't expect or just
5 don't secrete cytokines at all.

6 And so if you're using solely these two
7 methods to monitor your immune response to your
8 vaccine, you may be getting a gross under estimate
9 of the true picture.

10 A very important point is that both of
11 these methods don't allow further analysis of
12 antigen specific T cells. You can't use them to
13 isolate these cells out and study them further to
14 understand the biological activity properties, and
15 because both methods require significant in vitro
16 stimulation which could otherwise activate or alter
17 these cells in vitro, they don't tell you what's the
18 native in vivo state of these cells in the patients,
19 which could be a very important question to ask when
20 you're monitoring your clinical trial.

21 So what can you do to make it better?
22 Well, we know that the T cell receptor binds to MHC
23 peptide molecules. So is it possible to make
24 soluble MHC peptide molecules to stain antigen
25 specific T cells through the T cell receptor?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 It turns out that this interaction has a
2 fairly low affinity, approximately 1,000-fold lower
3 than antibody antigen interaction. So if you were
4 to make soluble MHC peptide molecules, they would
5 simply fall off during the wash and you would get no
6 staining.

7 John Altman, a previous postdoc. in our
8 lab who's now at Emory, found a creative solution.
9 He engineered a biotinylation signal peptide at the
10 end of the MHC molecule which allows you to
11 biotinylate the MHC and by adding avidin, you can
12 then bring forward these monomers together into
13 tetrameric complexes.

14 These complexes can engage two or three
15 T cell receptors simultaneously, thus greatly
16 increasing the avidity of the interaction and making
17 staining possible.

18 Very briefly, the way that these
19 reagents are made is that the beta-2-microglobulin
20 and the MHC molecules are synthesized in E. coli.
21 The peptide of interest is synthesized by a machine,
22 and these are mixed together in a folding reaction
23 which goes over three to four days.

24 At the end of this, a very small
25 fraction will be properly folded in a trimaric

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 complex. They are biotinylated with the enzyme VRA
2 and then extensively purified using FPLC and mono-Q.

3 At this point you add avidin at the
4 correct molar ration to bring these together into
5 tetrameric complexes, and by using avidin that's
6 directly conjugated to different fluorophores
7 (phonetic), such as PE or APC, you can use these as
8 staining reagents for FACS analysis or sorting.

9 There are certain limitations to this
10 approach. First of all, it requires you to know the
11 exact peptide target. However, in cancer vaccines,
12 that may not be such a big limitation because
13 oftentimes your vaccine is your peptide target.

14 Tetramers do require a fair bit of
15 experience to make, and therefore, they're not
16 widely available yet, and the sensitivity of this
17 method is limited by the sensitivity of FACS
18 analysis, and we've gotten our limit of detection
19 down to approximately .02 to .01 percent, or
20 approximately one in 10,000 cells.

21 So now let me show you a few brief
22 examples of what you can do with the tetramers,
23 looking at patients with melanoma and cervical
24 cancer.

S A G CORP.

1 In collaboration with Jeff Weber at USC,
2 we've looked at some patients with cervical cancer
3 who were vaccinated with the human papilloma virus
4 E-7, 12 to 20 peptide. Here are examples of two
5 patients that responded immunologically.

6 On the X axis is CD-8 staining that were
7 gating around CD-8 positive cells. On the Y axis is
8 staining with a tetramer, which is made of HLA-A2.1
9 in association with the E-7, 12-20 peptide.

10 Prevaccine, both patients had
11 essentially no tetramer staining cells. Our
12 background is .01 percent or less.

13 Thirty days post vaccine, Patient A had
14 a significant increase in the tetramer staining
15 cells to .21 percent of CD-8 or approximately one in
16 500.

17 Patient B had a much more subtle
18 response, representing only about .03 percent of CD-
19 8s. However, you can see that this population is
20 quite distinct and discrete, making this data fairly
21 believable.

22 I should say that in talking to Jeff
23 that neither of these patients had any clinical
24 response to the vaccine, suggesting that the mere
25 appearance of peptide specific T cells may or may

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 not be sufficient, and so we're in the process of
2 sorting these cells out and further analyzing their
3 biological characteristics to understand why they're
4 not doing the job.

5 Not only have we found evidence for
6 potentially tumor reactive T cells in vaccinated
7 patients, but we've also found them in some non-
8 vaccinated patients. This is an example of a
9 patient with metastatic melanoma prior to any
10 therapy or vaccine.

11 We've stained this patient's PVMC with a
12 panel of three different melanoma tetramers made
13 with MART-27, GP-100-154, and Tyrosinase-368, and we
14 found a very prominent tyrosinase specific
15 population in this patient, representing over two
16 percent of all the CD-8 cells.

17 Remind you again that this patient is
18 completely unmanipulated, no vaccines.

19 This patient also did not have any
20 evidence of vitiligo to suggest that this is somehow
21 a coincidental autoimmune process.

22 In addition, this patient had a small
23 EBV, Epstein Bar virus, specific population
24 representing about .2 percent of the CD-8 cells.

S A G CORP.

1 One important thing that we can do with
2 a tetramer is combine it with a lot of different
3 antibodies to know what are the other markers that
4 are being expressed by these antigen specific T
5 cells. We've stained this patient's cells with a
6 panel of anti-human V-beta antibodies, and we've
7 found that of all the patient cells that stain with
8 the tyrosinase tetramer, they all stain with a
9 single V-beta antibody V-beta-20, strongly
10 suggesting that this population is monoclonal at
11 least with regard to V-beta.

12 In collaboration with Mario Rhoederer at
13 Stanford, we've coupled the tetramer methodology
14 with a nine color FACS system, which really allows
15 us to look at a whole host of different markers that
16 are being expressed by these cells to get a very
17 complete picture of the phenotypic characteristics
18 of the cells.

19 And so far we've looked at over 30
20 different surface and intracellular markers that are
21 being expressed, including markers like CD-45 RA and
22 RO, which help delineate the T cell subsets,
23 activation markers, such as CD-38, and other
24 markers, such as the NK marker CD-16.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 One of the cool things we can do is
2 directly compare two different antigen specific
3 populations from the same patient simultaneously,
4 and showing here at the tyrosinase specific
5 population and the EBV specific population, and it
6 turns out that they're very different
7 phenotypically.

8 Whereas the tyrosinase specific
9 population expresses CD-45 RA but not RO, the EBV
10 population was the reverse. They express RO and not
11 RA, which is a more classic pattern for memory T
12 cells.

13 The tyrosinase specific population
14 expresses low levels of the activation marker CD-38,
15 while the EBV population does not, suggesting that
16 this population may be partially activated in vivo.

17 And interestingly, this population
18 expresses low levels of the NK marker CD-16, which
19 suggests that these cells may have some NK-like
20 properties or that they're NK-like T cells.

21 Another very important thing that we
22 could do is isolate by sorting these two populations
23 independently and directly assay them for the
24 cytolytic activity without any in vitro

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 manipulations. The EBV population had strong
2 cytolytic activity against peptide pulsed targets.

3 The tyrosinase specific population was
4 completely noncytolytic against either peptide
5 pulsed targets or melanoma targets, strongly
6 suggesting that this population is noncytolytic in
7 vivo, and this may be the explanation why the
8 patient's melanoma progressed despite the existence
9 of this large, potentially tumor reactive T cell
10 population.

11 And this, I think, is a particularly
12 important point for this audience because so far
13 probably the main goal for cancer vaccination has
14 been to elicit a tumor reactive CTL response, but
15 this data strongly suggests that having this
16 population may or may not be enough; that you also
17 have to make sure that this population maintains its
18 cytolytic activity, kind of like what Dr. Banchemereau
19 said yesterday. It would be like these crocodiles
20 turning back into zebras in vivo.

21 And potentially there may be a number of
22 theoretical reasons why tumor cells may be able to
23 change the phenotype of tumor reactive T cells in
24 vivo, and I think that could be a very important
25 point for future vaccination approaches.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Because this method is relatively easy
2 to do, we're able to study multiple time point in
3 this patient to get a sense of the temporal dynamics
4 of the response.

5 This patient was treated with a total of
6 four cycle of chemotherapy as indicated by the
7 arrows for metastatic disease. This population
8 dropped precipitously after the first cycle of
9 chemotherapy and remained very low throughout, even
10 well after the chemotherapy was discontinued.

11 What's not shown on this slide is that
12 the EBV population did not change at all with
13 chemotherapy, suggesting that these two different
14 antigen specific T cell populations have different
15 sensitivity to chemotherapy in vivo.

16 This could reflect the fact that the
17 potentially tumor reactive T cell population is more
18 active in vivo and, therefore, more susceptible to
19 the effects of chemotherapy, or that somehow they're
20 primed for the apoptosis pathway.

21 So in summary, the tetramers offer a
22 number of advantages that could be very useful for
23 monitoring immune responses to vaccines. First of
24 all, it doesn't require the cells to remain
25 functional in vitro and, therefore, gives you a much

S A G CORP.

1 more accurate enumeration of the total number of
2 antigen specific T cells, and you can also get a
3 sense for what percentage of those cells are
4 functional or not functional.

5 It allows you to directly isolate these
6 cells by sorting so that you can further analyze
7 them, and also you can expand them in vitro for
8 adoptive immunotherapy.

9 You can couple the tetramers with a
10 whole host of different antibodies, both surface and
11 intracellular markers, with multi-color FACS
12 analysis to get a much more complete picture of the
13 phenotypic characteristics of the cells.

14 And finally, because it's relatively
15 easy to perform, it allows you to quickly screen a
16 large number of patient samples at multiple time
17 points to get a sense for the temporal dynamics of
18 the response.

19 So going back to the black box that I
20 originally posed for the beginning, you know, you
21 have your vaccination strategy, and you have
22 clinical response. The tetramer is really going to
23 be a very useful method to start dissecting out
24 what's inside this black box, to understand what are
25 the immune characteristics that lead to good

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 clinical outcomes, and then to screen different
2 immune strategies that could elicit those desirable
3 immune responses.

4 I just want to acknowledge Mark Davis,
5 my PI and mentor at Stanford; Mario Rhoederer, who's
6 a real FACS whiz at Stanford, who helped develop the
7 nine color FACS system; Cassian Yee and Phil
8 Greenberg at Seattle, who are very close
9 collaborators for us; and Jeff Weber at USC, who's
10 collaborating with us to study the different
11 vaccination approaches that he told you about
12 earlier.

13 Thank you.

14 (Applause.)

15 DR. SZNOL: Thank you, Dr. Lee. That
16 was a very elegant talk.

17 I'd like to move on with the agenda, and
18 I'd like to introduce Dr. Kim Lyerly of the Duke
19 University Medical Center to speak about assays for
20 monitoring a CEA peptide induced immunologic
21 response in a dendritic cell trial.

22 DR. LYERLY: Thanks, Mario.

23 I want to again thank Raj and the
24 organizers for really putting together, I think, a
25 wonderful program, and it's a real privilege for me

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 to be here to chat a little bit about the program
2 and our particular interest in DC based vaccines.

3 Could I have the first slide, please?

4 What I'll start with is really to
5 acknowledge the fact that although I wish I could be
6 a dendritic cell evangelist, I guess I'm more of an
7 agnostic right now, and what I'd like to do is
8 really see what the experiments will show us and
9 really determine what kind of data we can get that
10 we can elicit T cell responses of a magnitude and
11 durability that we think they may have some clinical
12 benefit.

13 Now, this slide is a cartoon that just
14 depicts in very simplistic terms what we all think
15 may be some holy grail, some cellular immune
16 function.

17 Again, not to belittle the contribution
18 of antibodies, let's say that there's some perhaps
19 functional activity that's good for us, and what we
20 have to achieve is a super threshold level of this
21 functional activity in which, in fact, we'll have a
22 clinically effective response, and I'm focusing on T
23 cell responses during my talk.

24 What we can see here is that rather than
25 the simple enumeration of a digital response, a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 responder versus a nonresponder, we actually have to
2 perhaps look at the quantitative response and the
3 durability of these responses because if they are
4 clinically ineffective, they may, in fact, lead us
5 to choose something that if further developed could
6 be more effective.

7 And what I haven't included in this
8 slide, which is, again, very, very simplistic, is
9 the fact that the magnitude and duration of the
10 response during active disease or during a period of
11 effector cell function may be quite different than
12 the type and magnitude of the response during the
13 memory cell function.

14 So, again, I think I just want to
15 highlight that we're really poised to answer a lot
16 of questions with some new technologies, but we're
17 trying to be very receptive and say we're going to
18 be as unbiased as we can in trying to measure some
19 of these things.

20 So what I'm going to do is focus, based
21 on reading the program and kind of thematically
22 being consistent with this session, is to look at
23 some of the post immunization analysis issues that
24 we think are important.

1 The tetramer talk that we just heard, I
2 think, was a beautiful description of that
3 technology, and I think the place that it really is
4 the state of the art, and I would say that it really
5 fits into the category of direct analysis of
6 cellular responses, again, in this case the
7 circulation, where, you know, the phenotype or the
8 TCR that's specific for that specific peptide can be
9 quantitated by flow.

10 And there's another type of analysis
11 that is quite interesting, the immunoscope out of
12 the Pasteur Institute, and I'll show you some data
13 on that.

14 The other forms of direct analysis that
15 I'll spend some time talking about are more perhaps
16 functional assays, but they require a stimulation
17 phase, and again as pointed out, they do alter the
18 cell that we're trying to measure, and this is the
19 Fastimmune assay that we use, which is a three color
20 flow based assay that looks at intracellular
21 cytokine expression.

22 Now, as you can see, I've actually
23 segregated the assays from direct to in vitro
24 stimulated assays, and I think the in vitro
25 stimulated assays are probably the state of the art

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 today. They require activation, say, usually
2 antigen or APCs, and even though dendritic cells may
3 not be added to the in vitro culture, the fact that
4 there is a low frequency of APCs within the PBMCs is
5 probably the APC source here.

6 Oftentimes we take days, perhaps to
7 weeks, of in vitro stimulation, and often the
8 unspoken is that there are accessory growth factors
9 added to these cultures, and they may be
10 pharmacological additions of defined cytokines like
11 IL-2 or IL-7 or IL-12, or they may actually
12 represent the fact that CD-4 cells are present.
13 They're being stimulated and are producing cytokines
14 that are sustaining growth of the antigen specific T
15 cells.

16 And then the assays are typically
17 performed, and again, something that's probably
18 unspoken is the fact that timing of these assays is
19 critical. If you actually restimulate antigen
20 specific T cells too quickly after an in vitro
21 priming, you'll probably reduce the type of response
22 you get. You may trigger a ptosis rather than
23 activation or cytokine release and so forth.

24 So as you might imagine, there's a huge
25 variety of parameters just in the in vitro assays

S A G CORP.

1 that require in vitro stimulation, and we are
2 focusing a lot of energy in trying to avoid all of
3 those by direct analysis.

4 One of the things that we've tried to
5 also do is try to come to some sense of what's the
6 magnitude of the responses that we're likely to see
7 versus the types of responses that we all can form
8 some consensus on that are therapeutic, and some of
9 those therapeutic responses may, in fact, be T cell
10 responses against well known pathogens in which T
11 cell immunity is known to play a role.

12 So as an example, we looked at EBV
13 specific T cell responses, and if we do ELISPOT
14 analysis of the peripheral blood from healthy donors
15 that are EBV seropositive, again this cartoon
16 depicts this type of analysis, an ELISPOT that
17 depicts a circulating frequency of EBV specific T
18 cells.

19 And as an example, we can actually
20 quantitate this using in this case the EBV
21 transformed autologous B cells as a target cell and
22 as an APC. They serve that unique role, and you can
23 see a very nice segregation of those responders.

24 We can also use this type of analysis,
25 called the Fastimmune, which is three color flow in

S A G CORP.

1 which we stain in this case CD-4 positive cells that
2 are CD-69 positive, and we can gauge on TNF alpha or
3 interferon gamma secreting cells, in this example,
4 and identify populations of cells that are
5 responding by the intracellular accumulation of TNF
6 alpha or interferon gamma in a fairly reliable and
7 reasonable fashion.

8 We can also use this form of analysis to
9 look at CD-8 positive cells, and this is a
10 population of cells that were stimulated in vitro
11 and shown to be cytolytic, and again, analyze where
12 we see again a population of CD-8s that are cytokine
13 secreters.

14 Now, again, this seems very simple. You
15 use three color flow, and you use brofeldinate
16 (phonetic) to prevent secretion and just use
17 antibody staining for intracellular cytokines, but
18 again, the unspoken is that there's a variety of
19 physiological changes in the cytokine as it resides
20 within the intracellular compartment, and the pH
21 changes change the confirmation. So you have to
22 screen a large variety of antibodies.

23 So the antibodies that bind to soluble
24 cytokines in an ELISA may not bind very well in

S A G CORP.

1 these Fastimmune assays. You really have to look at
2 all of these details.

3 So let's switch to another system that
4 doesn't have an APC and a target cell within the
5 same cell. Here's a CNV specific response, and if
6 we take CNV seropositive donors and generate CTLs in
7 vitro and we subject the V-CTL populations to the
8 same type of analysis, you can see the traditional
9 cytolytic assays where we have a nice EDT titration
10 of killing.

11 We can analyze those same populations to
12 see frequencies of CNV specific T cells that are
13 secreting in this case gamma interferon, and you can
14 see that if we do the Fastimmune assays, gating CD-
15 4s or CD-8s, we get populations of T cells.

16 What's very provocative is that although
17 we can get nice killing here, the actual frequency
18 of CD-8 positive cells secreting cytokine is quite
19 small compared to the CD-4s, and in fact, again, can
20 give us some insight as to the nature of the immune
21 response that appears to be much more informative
22 and quantitative than the typical cytolytic assays
23 that we tend to use.

24 This is an example in which not only can
25 we use a gamma interferon, shown in the left-hand

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 panel, but can actually use intracellular cytokine
2 antibodies to IL-2, TNF alpha, and IL-4, again
3 giving us the opportunity to look not only for TH-1
4 type of responses, but in this case TH-2 type of
5 responses.

6 And I want to point out that these
7 assays, as nice as they look, they do require a lot
8 of work. Yu Ping Dang and Paul Mosca in the
9 laboratory worked very hard to actually develop an
10 assay that we can use on cryopreserved blood in a
11 direct, six hour assay using APCs and some physical
12 separation methods to detect in this case an antigen
13 specific CNV T cell response gated on CD-8
14 secreting TNF-alpha and interferon gamma.

15 So I use these types of examples, again,
16 to illustrate that probably in our hands the
17 functional state of the art in which we can detect
18 antigen specific T cells, that we have a fairly good
19 level of confidence in that they do serve some
20 clinically beneficial role to the host.

21 So let's move on to how can we apply
22 these same types of principles to analyzing T cell
23 responses in our clinical trials. This is actually
24 the house that Eli Gilboa built at Duke, and I want
25 to acknowledge, you know, his contribution as a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 collaborator and a friend in helping us move into
2 the field of dendritic cells, and in fact, this
3 building was built under his guidance to house a
4 GNP-GLP facility for the processing of dendritic
5 cells based on much of the work that he's done in
6 generating T cell responses in animal models against
7 peptide and RNA modified dendritic cells.

8 So, again, based on some of the feedback
9 I've taken from yesterday's sessions, let me just
10 point out that we started clinical trials with
11 peptide pulsed and RNA pulsed dendritic cells using
12 a single defined antigen called CEA. Jeff Schlom
13 will probably talk about that a little bit later.

14 We used the monocyte derived DCs from
15 cancer patients after phoresis growth in serum free
16 media in GM-CSF and IL-4 kindly provided by Mary
17 Ellen Rybak from Schering.

18 Then we actually washed, pulsed with
19 antigen, and actually we cryopreserve the entire lot
20 of dendritic cells that we generate because we
21 wanted to do some characterization of these cells
22 before we administered them.

23 We looked at the typical sterility and
24 viability issues. We stained for these markers only
25 because we wanted to use a panel of other markers,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 but these markers we actually could get performed in
2 our bone marrow transplant lab under GLP conditions,
3 and we actually looked at function, not as lot
4 release criteria, but as a research assay for the
5 cells that we were giving back.

6 This is a very busy slide, but typically
7 it's going to give you two groups of cells, one in
8 which we just generated dendritic cells based on
9 that protocol, and you can see we get the typical
10 yields, and these are all in cancer patients.

11 We also used -- actually that's flipped
12 around -- we also used a strategy in which we did an
13 antibody depletion at the final step to remove that
14 contaminating population of small cells found in all
15 the dendritic cell preps. to try to improve our
16 yield and the purity of the product.

17 This is, again, the depleted and the
18 nondepleted cells, the typical histograms from the
19 flow cytometry. You know, we see a little bit of
20 contaminate 8-14. We see 86 and DR at fairly
21 significant levels, and these are the typical
22 yields.

23 And what's interesting is although we've
24 spent, you know, about \$2,000 worth of columns and
25 antibodies to deplete, we didn't really get, you

S A G CORP.

1 know, an amazingly better product. So some of the
2 features of immunophenotyping for dendritic cells
3 that allow us to give more pure or an apparently
4 more pure population, I think, will rely a little
5 bit on defining the parameters, defining the
6 features of dendritic cells that we want.

7 And I agree completely with the
8 discussion from yesterday which is it's hard to
9 define that ideal population, and we have no idea
10 that in this depleted population if we completely
11 removed the cells that were truly affecters or truly
12 beneficial. So we've actually stopped doing this
13 antibody depletion step.

14 The other point I want to make is the
15 issue of contamination of the phenotype and the
16 assessment of the maturity of dendritic cells. This
17 is just, you know, two dendritic cell preps. in
18 serum and serum free conditions in which we looked
19 at CD-83 expression based on exposure to TNF-alpha.

20 And you can see the hours after
21 exposure. You see a shift in the CD-83 expression,
22 again, consistent with the ideas that CD-83 is
23 intracellular and being presented on the cell
24 surface as the dendritic cells mature, and this
25 change in phenotype also changes in association with

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the functional ability to take up antigen and
2 present.

3 So, again, I worry a little bit if we're
4 presuming that we know what type of cell to give
5 we'll set some arbitrary conditions for what's real,
6 and in fact, I would suggest that if, you know, you
7 say that you have to have 90 percent CD-83 positive
8 cells, you may bias all of the lot release criteria
9 to the people with the dirtiest labs because they'll
10 have a lot of contamination. They'll have some
11 cytokine release from granulocytes or some
12 contaminating cells, and in fact, that's probably
13 not what you want to do.

14 Well, we also did the functional assays
15 on all of these patients. We actually did primary T
16 cell responses. This is work done by Smeda Neyer
17 and Mike Morris in the laboratory in which they
18 actually spent two to three weeks of in vitro
19 culture demonstrating that in all of these
20 cryopreserved dendritic cell preps. in these A-2
21 positive patients, we were able to generate T cell
22 responses specific for the peptide, some greater
23 than others, and you can see there's a variety of
24 levels of cytolytic activity.

S A G CORP.

1 Again, I show this slide not to suggest
2 that we should be doing this, but to really
3 emphasize how important it is to search for
4 alternatives rather than the traditional cytokine or
5 cytolytic function, again, which is very labor
6 dependent and depends on high levels of IL-2, IL-7,
7 depletion of CD-4 cells, and then an in vitro assay
8 for lytic activity against a target cell.

9 What this really means is unclear. The
10 same type of analysis on the RNA transfected cells.

11 Again, what I want to do is highlight
12 the contribution of Eli Gilboa in his observation
13 that RNA transfection of dendritic cells can elicit
14 primary T cell responses, and this is a CEA specific
15 cytolytic activity correlating with this Fastimmune
16 type of analysis, which again perhaps may be a
17 functional assay that can replace some of the
18 cytolytic assays that are done.

19 So for the last two minutes of the talk,
20 I'd like to spend some time talking about the actual
21 clinical trial, which is using these cryopreserved
22 dendritic cells. We gave them IV. We actually did
23 a couple of studies that are present in cancer
24 research after indium labeling showing that IV

1 administration leads to a distribution to the lungs
2 and then to the spleen and the liver.

3 And what I don't have for the lack of
4 time is the fact that if we do subcutaneous versus
5 intradermal injections, the radiolabeled dendritic
6 cells in the injection to the dermis appear to
7 traffic to the draining lymph nodes, but they don't
8 appear to traffic when they're injected
9 subcutaneously.

10 Now, again, we have no idea if the
11 draining lymph nodes are attracting the dendritic
12 cells that are truly triggering T cell responses,
13 and again, those will form the foundation for
14 further studies.

15 Okay. Let me point out that we have
16 been very adamant about getting prevaccine phoreses
17 samples as baselines, undergoing vaccination, and
18 appreciate that circulating and trafficking T cells
19 may, in fact, be different cell populations.

20 Here's an example where if we take a
21 post vaccination sample and do a CTL expansion we
22 get some activity. It appears to be a little bit
23 higher than the prevaccination activity, but what's
24 even perhaps a light bit higher is the T cells
25 associated with tumor that are isolated from

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 malignant infusion, again, suggesting that if we
2 look in the peripheral blood only, the frequency and
3 function of the T cells, that in fact may be useful
4 in providing some clinical benefit that, you know,
5 may be quite different.

6 Again, to highlight the fact that one of
7 the advantages we think of whole protein or complete
8 tumor antigen loading of dendritic cells is the fact
9 that CD-4 responses can be obtained, and this is
10 with an RNA transfected DCs stimulating T cells.

11 And let me spend, again, some time
12 talking about the T cell analysis. Here is a
13 peptide pulsed dendritic cell patient, again,
14 ELISPOT analysis, very low frequencies of T cells,
15 but maybe some hint that there's some T cell
16 activation in the post immunization sample.

17 If we do a TCR analysis comparing pre
18 and post immunization, there's some hint that V-
19 beta-14 and V-beta-21 populations of T cells may be
20 expanding, and these are direct analysis of RNA
21 isolated from peripheral blood.

22 And if we actually do in vitro
23 stimulation of normal donors, as well as looking at
24 some of our patients, we see in some of those who
25 have had other clinical or other immunological

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 parameters of T cell responses in the peptide some
2 sense that there may be some oligoclonal expansion.

3 What's interesting, this data is very
4 different. This family, the V-beta-21 family, is
5 very different than what has been reported for
6 restriction by Ruvellia Philip. You know, I can't
7 explain that, and this is the confirmatory cytolytic
8 activity, again, after two to three weeks of in
9 vitro stimulation, showing killing of CA specific
10 targets.

11 In my last 20 seconds, I want to point
12 out that obviously the holy grail is data such as
13 this in which we can identify immunological
14 surrogates that will predict positive clinical
15 benefits, and I would say that in my opinion we'll
16 have to look for prolonged life or an absence of
17 recurrence.

18 This is, again, an illustrative example
19 of other surrogates, you know, trying to correlate
20 with the surrogates. Obviously we can see the folly
21 in trying to do that, but at some point in the
22 future we will hopefully be able to develop these
23 surrogate markers, the activation of specific T
24 cells in a measurable fashion that will hopefully
25 correlate to the development of positive or

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 beneficial clinical responses, in this case CA-15-3
2 that drops back down into a preimmunization or
3 preregression level.

4 Again, the one thing I wanted to
5 highlight, Eli Gilboa had a poster here yesterday.
6 The one thing we like about the RNA in the group is
7 that we agree a lot with Jim Mule and some of the
8 other whole tumor cell vaccine people in that we're
9 not exactly sure which tumor antigen is the
10 authentic tumor rejection antigen, and the potential
11 use of RNA may overcome some of the problems with
12 isolating whole tumor cells from every patient.

13 Jeff Sosman was saying, "Well, you guys,
14 autologous tumor cell vaccines will never work
15 because you'll never get enough autologous tumor
16 cells from any, you know, great population of
17 patients to make this work. The only thing you'll
18 be able to do is get a paraffin fixed slide, and
19 that's the only source of tumor antigen that you're
20 going to have."

21 And, in fact, the use of RNA actually
22 overcomes that obstacle. In fact, you can use the
23 RNA content from cells within the paraffin fixed
24 slide to generate messenger RNA encoding for all of
25 the antigens within the tumor, and as a proof of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 principle, Eli, Smeda Meyer, and the clinical group
2 isolated the tumor from patients along with the
3 corresponding phoresis.

4 You can see here that the dendritic cell
5 stimulated with CEA and GFP as a control were able
6 to target RNA transfected DCs, autologous tumor
7 cells, and DCs transfected with total tumor RNA.

8 And, again, in my last slide, it's very
9 interesting. If you take the total tumor RNA
10 content of that tumor cell, and this is from Eli's
11 poster, you actually can generate a T cell response
12 in vitro that's cytolytic for autologous tumor
13 cells.

14 So, again, I say we're at the beginning
15 of an exciting period of time. I want to, again,
16 thank the organizers for giving me the privilege of
17 showing you some of our data.

18 Thanks.

19 (Applause.)

20 DR. SZNOL: Thanks, Kim.

21 The next talk is by Dr. Mary Disis from
22 the University of Washington on peptide-based
23 vaccines for cancer immunotherapy.

24 DR. DISIS: Thank you.

1 Basically my mandate was to talk about
2 laboratory monitoring, and I'm going to follow up
3 what Kim was talking about, not necessarily showing
4 you the panoply of very quantitative assays that are
5 coming out right now to monitor clinical trials, but
6 rather show you a snapshot of an assay that we use
7 in the lab and the struggles with trying to
8 determine sensitivity and specificity and how assays
9 correlate to a gold standard in a field where there
10 really is no gold standard.

11 So firstly, what I'd like to do is talk
12 a little bit about clinical trial design in terms of
13 the patients that we're immunizing, and really the
14 big problem of trying to immunize patients with
15 cancer with a vaccine and exactly what's going on
16 with their immune systems and are they really immune
17 competent, and just a little bit of data that we're
18 trying to collect on the patients that we're
19 immunizing, and really spend the bulk of my time
20 taking you through a particular assay and showing
21 you how we're trying to compare it with other assays
22 in the lab.

23 And I'll start by telling you my bias
24 that I really think we're at a point in time when
25 there are a lot of tools available to us, and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 inherent into Phase I studies should be people who
2 are willing to compare assays in a fashion uniformly
3 in multiple patients over time so we can develop the
4 type of database to tell us what the sensitivity and
5 specificity of these assays are.

6 I'll also start by telling you that I'm
7 going to talk about an assay for looking at CD-4 T
8 cells, and in fact, our current Phase I trial of
9 HER-2/neu peptide vaccines of, which I'm not going
10 to talk about clinical data and the results we're
11 seeing, is to really immunize patients with vaccines
12 that are composed of three peptides.

13 And these peptides are longer helper
14 epitopes that have been figured out in experiments
15 that have already been published to be epitopes that
16 will elicit a helper response to HER-2.

17 The structure of the HER-2/neu
18 antigen -- it's a transmembrane domain protein that
19 consists of an extracellular domain and
20 intracellular domain -- really lends you to think
21 that not only a cytotoxic T cell response may be
22 effective, but also an antibody response, and
23 indeed, people have already shown that antibodies
24 directed toward HER-2/neu can be clinically
25 effective. So this is our strategy of immunization

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 with longer 15 MER peptides that are potential
2 helper epitopes.

3 We do have an immunization strategy
4 going for eliciting HER-2/neu specific CTL, but I
5 won't get into that today.

6 We immunized patients monthly for six
7 months, and we used GM-CSF as an adjuvant, and the
8 primary endpoint of our study obviously is safety.
9 It's a Phase I, but the secondary endpoint is really
10 to see if we can generate immunity.

11 And when I talk about the generation of
12 immunity, I mean quantitative or semi-quantitative
13 measurements of HER-2/neu specific peptide and
14 protein immunity because our bias is if you're
15 immunizing with peptides, it's only the protein
16 specific responses that may potentially be
17 functional, and looking at that immunity in
18 comparison with other antigens, both positive and
19 negative control antigens.

20 So looking at, let's say, CD-4 specific
21 immunity in terms of what the tetanus response is,
22 am I even getting to the level of a vaccinated
23 antigen? So trying to bring into the system some
24 idea of where this vaccine works in comparison with
25 other known vaccines.

S A G CORP.

1 And in addition, I'll show you we do do
2 anneal immunization with KLH at the beginning of the
3 study to see what our level of vaccination is
4 compared with vaccinating against a foreign antigen.

5 And our strategy inherently built into a
6 Phase I study is to use multiple assays of analysis.
7 So not only are we looking for specific immune
8 responses against HER-2/neu, but also how many of
9 these assays correlate with each other in terms of
10 predicting that immune response and which assay is
11 most robust and reproducible over time.

12 What I'd really like to just show you a
13 little bit of data on is our eligibility criteria.
14 We felt very strongly to try to immunize patients
15 that we would potentially want to immunize in terms
16 of a Phase II study, and our shtick is that you
17 immunize patients with a vaccine to protect just
18 like an infectious disease vaccine.

19 So by definition we had to immunize
20 patients who were at a minimal disease state or had
21 no evidence of disease. Yet we're immunizing
22 against a self-antigen, HER-2/neu.

23 So the risk-benefit ratio for these
24 patients, if we generated immune responses and could
25 elicit autoimmune toxicity had to be worth their

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 while. So we looked at Stage III or Stage IV
2 patients whose tumors over expressed the antigen of
3 interest, best ovarian and lung cancer.

4 These patients were all treated prior to
5 being on study, and they were at a point in their
6 treatment where just observation alone was what they
7 were undertaking. These patients had no evidence of
8 disease or minimal residual disease post therapy,
9 and the mandate to the physicians referring the
10 patients was these patients have to be free of
11 disease and off therapy for six months. So these
12 can't be very unstable patients.

13 We allowed hormones and radiation
14 therapy, but we pretested everyone before they came
15 into the study with the CMI multi-test, which is a
16 classic test of energy looking at seven different
17 recall antigens, and if the patients were anergic,
18 they weren't allowed onto the study because our
19 conjecture was any toxicity we might see may be
20 related to the development of immune responses, and
21 if the patients couldn't develop immune responses,
22 then it wouldn't really be worth their while as a
23 toxicity study.

24 And what we found, and this is in
25 parentheses, that the vast majority of patients, all

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of the patients that we've enrolled to date --
2 actually the study is closed -- the performance
3 status on these patients was uniformly greater than
4 85 percent.

5 But what I'd like to show you was
6 something that we learned that really blew a bias
7 that I had, and I went into this study thinking most
8 patients with advanced stage cancer were going to be
9 pretty immune incompetent, and basically what we
10 found was in 53 patients who walked in the door --
11 and this is just a small side study once we made
12 this observation -- when we tested patients with the
13 CMI multi-test where the rules are really not very
14 stringent, you have to have a DTH greater than two
15 millimeters to at least two of seven of the recall
16 antigens to be considered not anergic.

17 Thirty-six percent of patients didn't
18 respond to anything. So they were anergic. We sent
19 them away. Thirty-four patients, or 64 percent,
20 were anergic and they were eligible and they were
21 enrolled.

22 We found that patients hated being sent
23 away on a vaccine study. So we said to them, "Okay.
24 Well, prove you're anergic. Two of the antigens
25 that are in the CMI are diphtheria and tetanus. Why

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 don't you go get a DT? When was your last one done?
2 Come back in two months and we'll test you again and
3 then we'll show you that your immune system isn't
4 functional."

5 And we were able to do that with ten
6 patients, and basically when these ten patients came
7 back after getting a DT, we found that 90 percent of
8 them responded specifically to diphtheria and
9 tetanus, whereas only one patient continued not to
10 be anergic.

11 So what we've done is we've enlisted
12 another 15 patients on study who were anergic by
13 these criteria, had no responses to any recall
14 antigens, and we've immunized them, and these are
15 the last patients on the study. So I have none of
16 this data.

17 And we're going to compare to see
18 whether these patients couldn't be immunized to HER-
19 2/neu, but more importantly, couldn't be immunized
20 to KLH, which is our positive control immunization
21 antigen.

22 And I throw this in to say that our
23 patients were highly selected for being in pretty
24 good shape with minimal disease, and clearly even
25 though they were advanced stage patients, and many

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of our patients had breast cancer and were a Stage
2 IV, clearly they weren't as immune incompetent as I
3 would have assumed.

4 So what I'd like to end up with and talk
5 about for the rest of my time is assay systems and
6 take you specifically on a tour of a single assay
7 system that we used looking at CD-4 T cell responses
8 in a semi-quantitative fashion.

9 And I'll tell you that we were hindered
10 a little bit by the fact that most of our patients
11 enrolled in the study were patients with breast
12 cancer, and they could not be leukophoresed in terms
13 of having peripheral lines placed and the challenge
14 of lymphedema, and at this point of starting the
15 study, we didn't feel that we could rightly say to
16 these patients that they should undergo femoral line
17 catheter placement for a leukophoresis for us to get
18 immunologic samples.

19 So we decided that we were going to take
20 blood from the patients sequentially as they came
21 onto the study, and that we would bleed them 30 days
22 after each vaccine prior to them getting the next
23 vaccine. We would analyze all of the material we
24 got fresh in terms of these assays. So everything
25 that I'm going to show you is on fresh PBMC; and

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that we would build into our analysis looking at the
2 reproducibility of these assays over time as a
3 snapshot in patients.

4 So what I'd like to do is just show you
5 the feasibility of this assay in terms of how much
6 blood you get and exactly how robust an assay like
7 this is.

8 The immunologic evaluations we're doing
9 in general for T helper responses are looking at
10 modified limiting dilution proliferation assay first
11 described by Mario Geisen and published by Reese in
12 1993. I think the reference is in your handout.

13 And we've adapted this assay to split
14 well into cytokines to look for specific T helper
15 responses and cytokine production in a limiting
16 dilution fashion with interferon gamma and IL-5.

17 We're also looking at the development of
18 antibody on the patients in a very quantitative
19 ELISA. Anyone who's interested in this, I brought
20 some slides with me, but I won't have time to go
21 through them for both peptides and protein, and all
22 of the QA for the large number of patients you need
23 to establish baselines, which are much easier to do
24 serologically.

S A G CORP.

1 From a cytotoxic T cell standpoint,
2 we're looking at a limiting dilution analysis based
3 on chromium release, as well as ELISPOT, again, only
4 looking at interferon gamma, but making autologous
5 targets on all the patients using autologous BLCLs
6 and fibroblasts.

7 And finally, I will talk a little bit
8 about DTH that we do at a distant site using the
9 individual immunizing peptides, looking not only at
10 induration, but also histology, and what I'll do is
11 give you a comparison of this proliferation assay
12 with the DTH assay as an unknown assay compared to
13 the gold standard DTH, which I'm not quit convinced
14 is a gold standard, but it's really the best we
15 have.

16 This is an example of the assay, and
17 this is an example of the data that we get on the
18 patients and how the actual report looks when it
19 comes out of our group, and Kevin Witham and Kathy
20 Schiffman in the lab have spent a lot of time
21 developing database programs that allow direct
22 downloading of data from our plate readers into the
23 data bank and to have formats like this put up.

24 This was a modified limiting dilution
25 analysis looking at T cell proliferation as a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 functional assay based on looking at 24 replicates
2 of a single E to T ratio against multiple different
3 antigens. It's semi-quantitative.

4 Basically, you take the mean and three
5 standard deviations of 24 wells of no antigen, and
6 that gives you a cutoff point, and any well above
7 this cutoff point that's positive is positive with
8 95 percent confidence interval because of the
9 antigen that was supposedly placed in the well, and
10 the error on this assay statistically is 1.5 wells.

11 So if you have two wells positive, it's
12 what we use to call the assay a bust assay of the no
13 antigen well. It kind of invalidates your assay.

14 And basically we set up this and plot
15 every single data point, and this is the panoply of
16 antigens that we use. We use about 15 antigens, not
17 only a combination of positive and negative
18 controls, the negative controls being the no antigen
19 and peptides that aren't in the patient's immunizing
20 mix that are similar length and size, but also
21 positive controls, such as PHA and nonspecific
22 mitogen of which you see no dots because it's
23 totally off the area, as well as KLH to which the
24 patients were immunized at the start of the study,
25 and then on another plate a panel of recall

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antigens, tetanus, candida, and other antigens that
2 they would have a CD-4 response to endogenously.

3 And not only do we express this as
4 positive wells here, but also as a stimulation index
5 that's calculated off the mean of a 24 well
6 replicate, not just the mean of positive wells, over
7 the mean of 24 no antigen wells, so that it gives
8 some statistical validity.

9 So this is the type of data I'm going to
10 be showing to you in terms of reproducibility over
11 time.

12 The data that I'm going to show you is
13 based on 40 patients, the first 40 patients enrolled
14 in the study, and they get seven blood draws, seven
15 to eight blood draws. We try to do two blood draws
16 pre so we have cells frozen back, as well as
17 sequential blood draws during the course of all six
18 immunizations.

19 So that gives you actually the potential
20 for 280 samples. Actually what we got was 218 blood
21 draws, about 180 to 240 cc's each, with 203 assays
22 available for analysis.

23 In the modified LDA it requires 75
24 million PBMC, and the mean range of PBMC yield out
25 of these 218 blood draws is 162, with some of the

S A G CORP.

1 patients really not having enough cells to even run
2 the assay at a particular time point. So out of the
3 203 assays that we have, 173, 85 percent, of the
4 blood draws actually yielded enough cells to do the
5 complete assay as I showed you.

6 In those 203 assays, we had an error
7 rate of three percent of what we called inaccurate
8 assays, and this is data that we don't use, and we
9 describe inaccurate as a control problem.

10 So if the no antigen wells were greater
11 than two positive wells and no antigen, meaning that
12 there was some type of autoresponse or maybe
13 something was in the media, that is not considered
14 an assay that can be used.

15 Similarly, if less than 24 wells are
16 stimulated with PHA, meaning that this nonspecific
17 mitogen wasn't generating the response it should,
18 that assay is not used.

19 So based on those very strict negative
20 and positive controls, only three percent of the
21 assays were not usable. And the number of data
22 points that we achieved out of these 203 assays was
23 2,242.

24 So how do you analyze this for
25 reproducibility, sensitivity, and whether this means

S A G CORP.

1 anything in real time? And for that we solicited
2 the help of Ted Gooly, a biostatistician at the Fred
3 Hutch. and convinced him to move away from clinical
4 stuff and try to help us talk about immunologic
5 monitoring.

6 And the first immediate question was:
7 do these positive wells correlate to a stimulation
8 index? And as you increase positive wells, do you
9 increase the stimulation index?

10 And so what Ted did was Spearman's rank
11 correlation where he took all the data on all the
12 patients at a specific time point, like time zero,
13 to a specific antigen and ran P values, which all
14 were significant, and then he made a rank
15 association, and basically this is a stimulation
16 index against number of positive wells with the rank
17 association not done in 3D, showing you a
18 scattergram that, indeed, the simple question do
19 positive wells correlate to stimulation index, yes,
20 and indeed, the more positive wells you get, the
21 more like your stimulation index is to be elevated.

22 And basically, once you have half the
23 wells positive, that's when you really start seeing
24 a stimulation index greater than two, which could be
25 consistent with an immunized response.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, the reason why we decided to use a
2 semi-quantitative assay is that we went in with the
3 bias that most of the responses that we'd try to be
4 seeing would be extremely low level. So many of the
5 studies that had already been reported before in
6 Tumor Immunology for peptide immunizations, you
7 stimulate with a peptide or immunize with a peptide;
8 you see a stimulation index, maybe three or four.

9 So we were optimizing looking at
10 responses that were less than stimulation indices of
11 four, and this is what some of the data looks like
12 sequentially. So these are individual patients
13 against one of the peptides in their immunizing mix,
14 and basically these are time points that were taken
15 over six months to show reproducibility.

16 And the nice thing about this assay is
17 it potentially controls for any background
18 variability by setting the cutoff point of that
19 assay with the no antigen wells of the assay itself.

20 And what we found was that the assay was
21 really quite reproducibly over time; that patients
22 did, indeed, boost responses. This is stimulation
23 indices, are the square data points, and number of
24 positive wells are the round data points; and that

1 you could actually see that people developed
2 significant stimulation indices to peptides.

3 And what I'm not showing you here is
4 also to protein because we don't have protein DTH
5 responses to compare.

6 But it also points out one of the
7 potential problems of the semi-quantitative assay,
8 and that's once you hit a certain stimulation index
9 or 24 positive wells, you've pretty much lost your
10 ability to enumerate your responses. So you really
11 have to look at the sensitivity of the assay, and
12 basically we hit the sensitivity of the assay.

13 And so fortunately we have cells that
14 we've been working on since we do blood draws so
15 much and so much blood from the patients that we can
16 develop, and we have developed, quantitative ELISPOT
17 assays to look at three different cytokine
18 secretions of CD-4 T cells to see if we can get a
19 handle on exactly what these precursor frequencies
20 are in real time.

21 And then to show you this again with not
22 only P-98, which is a HER-2/neu peptide, but also a
23 recall antigen, that again, if you're starting out
24 with a fairly robust, proliferative response with
25 number of positive wells, you're not really going to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 be able to detect a boosting and immune response
2 like you could with this peptide.

3 But it also points out a problem with
4 the stimulation index and the fact that the
5 stimulation index is very variable, probably
6 depending on culture conditions, and indeed,
7 although number of positive wells didn't change over
8 time, this patient did have one data point where she
9 had a big bounce in the stimulation index.

10 And when you look at, let's say, PHA in
11 these patients, nonspecific mitogen PHA, and if you
12 go back into the literature and look at PHA
13 responses, they're always shown on a log scale like
14 this, and that's because if you look at the
15 stimulation index of individual patients with PHA
16 assessments done at monthly time points, just as
17 part of our assay, stimulation indices really bounce
18 around quite a bit, and if I didn't plot this out on
19 a log scale, you'd say, "Boy, that really is a lot
20 of variability in assay."

21 So, again, you have to really define the
22 sensitivity and specificity of the assay and also
23 develop a feel for what the noise of the assays are.
24 I would say stimulation index is a good look at very
25 robust responses. There's a lot of background noise

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 compared to the modified limiting dilution type of
2 analysis, but yet the sensitivity of the modified
3 limiting dilution analysis has kind of reached a
4 peak.

5 So how does this correlate to real time?
6 And I'd like to show you some data on DTHes. We DTH
7 everyone to their individual immunizing peptides at
8 the end of the study, and basically this is a
9 patient who had a good response to 369-15 MER with a
10 DTH of 17 millimeters, SI of 35, and the DTH was a
11 CD-4 infiltrate.

12 When we look at how DTH correlates to
13 the peripheral blood SIs we're seeing in over 60
14 skin tests placed, actually DTHes greater than ten
15 millimeters had a very good correlation with an odds
16 ratio of 11.

17 If I showed P values for every single
18 time point, five, six, seven, eight, nine, as the
19 DTH induration got larger, the P value would get
20 more significant, but if you look at it as a group,
21 the odds ratio is pretty good at 4.4.

22 So in our hands, DTH responses
23 correlated very well to peripheral blood T cell
24 responses as measured.

1 So to conclude, I think the important
2 thing really is to define what the trial endpoint
3 is. For us it was immunity, as well as a comparison
4 of assay systems as an endpoint evaluation, which I
5 hope to have more data to show you in the coming
6 year, to optimize your population based on the
7 endpoint you want to achieve, to use multiple
8 measures of evaluation uniformly, and also to
9 standardize not only your laboratory procedures and
10 controls, and SOPs are things that we use routinely
11 in the lab.

12 And I'd like to thank specifically my
13 group at the University of Washington: Keith
14 Knutson, Kathy Schiffman, Kevin Witham, Paul
15 Crosby, and Charles Bendock, who are responsible for
16 the clinical trial laboratory.

17 The peptide vaccine is supplied by
18 Corixa; GM-CSF by Immunex, and I'd like to thank Mac
19 Chiever at Corixa who's been my collaborator in this
20 from the beginning, and Ted Gooly who's continuing
21 working with us on determining the sensitivity and
22 specificity of immunologic monitoring assays.

23 Thank you.

24 (Applause.)

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. SIEGEL: Our next speaker is Dr.
2 Jeff Schlom of the Cancer Institute, who will talk
3 to us about synergy of co-stimulatory molecules in
4 two cell activation.

5 DR. SCHLOM: May I have the first slide,
6 please? I'm getting signals from up there.

7 Well, let me just start. One of the
8 major problems in vaccine development is the potency
9 of the T cell immune response, and it is well known
10 that there are many, many ways to try to enhance
11 that immune response.

12 We have been involved in a series of
13 preclinical studies and clinical trials with a
14 variety of immunogens, recombinant vaccinia virus
15 being one which is replication competent;
16 recombinant Avipox viruses, in particular, ALVCA or
17 recombinant fowl pox, which are replication
18 defective which means that they infect mammalian
19 cells but do not replicate in mammalian cells;
20 peptide; and modified peptide.

21 Our preclinical studies and now some of
22 our early collaborative clinical trials have shown
23 that it appears that it's a diversified vaccination
24 protocol which gives the optimal immune response,
25 and the work I'm going to talk about not only deals

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 with vectors or peptides. I think it is quite
2 relevant to whole tumor cell vaccines and dendritic
3 cell based vaccines.

4 So the major question we set out to ask
5 is: to what limits can one employ co-stimulation to
6 enhance T cell activation?

7 Now, a little review of co-stimulation.
8 If you have an antigen presenting cell, such as a
9 tumor, which has an antigen and MHC complex, peptide
10 MHC complex, and this interacts with the T cell
11 receptor of a T cell, the outcome of that is going
12 to be anergy and apoptosis because there's no second
13 signal, no co-stimulatory signal.

14 If you have a professional antigen
15 presenting cell, such as a dendritic cell, monocyte
16 macrophage B cell, you have your antigen MHC T cell
17 receptor signaling, and then you have a second
18 signal, a co-stimulatory molecule to its receptor
19 providing signal, too.

20 And if you have both signals, you see
21 clonal expansion and other effective functions,
22 cytokine release lysis.

23 Okay. Now, T cell co-stimulation is a
24 well established phenomenon. It's been shown in

1 many, many cases in preclinical studies to enhance T
2 cell responses and enhance antitumor immunity.

3 The mode of delivery for about 95
4 percent of these studies has been retroviral
5 vectors. We have not used retroviral vectors
6 because of the requirement of drug selection and DNA
7 replication of cells.

8 There's been some work done with anti-
9 CTLA-4 antibodies. These are antibodies which are
10 really looking at the B-7 co-stimulatory molecule.

11 We have used, as have others, pox
12 viruses, and we've done this in two ways: making
13 dual gene constructs, so a vaccinia virus or an
14 AVIPOX virus with a tumor antigen like CEA and a co-
15 stimulatory molecule like B-7, both on the same
16 vector; or simply add mixing vaccinia CEA with a
17 vector vaccinia B-7.

18 Okay. Now, what are the potential
19 advantages and disadvantages of using pox virus
20 vectors to deliver co-stimulatory molecules?

21 The major advantage of one of the major
22 advantages is rapid infection of the majority of
23 cells. Greater than 90 percent of cells express the
24 co-stimulatory molecule in five hours. So you can
25 envision a tumor, a dendritic cell, whatever. You

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 put in the pox virus vector and within five hours 90
2 percent of the cells are expressing the co-
3 stimulatory transgene.

4 There's no need for cell division or
5 drug selection as with retroviral vectors, and also
6 very important, one can insert multiple genes,
7 multiple co-stimulatory molecule genes or multiple
8 tumor antigen genes. This is something unique to
9 pox virus vectors.

10 The potential disadvantage, especially
11 with a replication competent virus such as vaccinia,
12 is anti-vector responses, although if you're putting
13 it inside a cell, it may not be a disadvantage but
14 an advantage.

15 And if you're dealing with a replication
16 defective virus, like AVIPOX or fowl pox, it really
17 shouldn't matter.

18 The question with co-stimulation is
19 always autoimmunity. How much are you going to
20 stimulate and what are the consequences in terms of
21 antitumor immunity versus autoimmunity?

22 Before I start showing data, I want to
23 acknowledge the people who carried these studies
24 out. The vast majority of the studies that I'm
25 going to talk to you about were carried out by Dr.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 James Hodge and members of his group, Arial Rad and
2 Dr. Matthias Lorenz.

3 Other studies were carried out by Helen
4 Subzevari and Judith Kanter.

5 Our collaborators in these studies, some
6 of these studies, were Thereon, Dr. Dennis
7 Panicali, Linda Gritz and Gail Mazzara.

8 There are two clinical trials ongoing
9 now with an ALVAX CEA B-7 construct, one by Howard
10 Kauffman at Albert Einstein, and one at Fox Chase by
11 Dr. von Mehren.

12 But I want to talk to you about the
13 basis concept of multiple co-stimulatory molecules.
14 Ninety-eight percent of the literature involved B-7
15 and the activation of its ligand, CD-28, but indeed,
16 there's a range of co-stimulatory molecules that are
17 now known, and this is just a partial list: ICAM-1
18 and LFA-3. They have different ligands, and they
19 signal through different mechanisms.

20 And this is a standard co-stimulation
21 assay. The assay involves an antigen presenting
22 cell, in this case MC-38 murine tumor cells which
23 have no co-stimulatory molecules on them, as I said,
24 virtually all nonhematologic tumors.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Our responder cells unless otherwise
2 mentioned are always naive T cells, and sigma 1 here
3 is Con A. We see the same results with anti-CD-3 or
4 peptide, et cetera.

5 So that no one loses interest to these
6 studies, we'll use the generic antigen here, Con A,
7 and you can see that you do see some stimulation
8 when you infect your antigen presenting cells with
9 LFA-3, ICAM-1, and the best result is with B-7. You
10 get the best stimulation of your T cells in this
11 rank.

12 I'm going to show this slide again later
13 on.

14 This is just a control to show that all
15 of the effects we're seeing can be blocked by the
16 specific antibody to these particular co-stimulatory
17 molecules.

18 Now, these are all published; the next
19 two slides are published data where we look at an
20 antitumor effect of a vaccinia CEA in the
21 experimental model. Use one injection, and you see
22 a little bit of antitumor effect. If you simply add
23 mix this with a vaccinia virus expressing B-7, you
24 amplify the antitumor effect.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 You see the same type of situation with
2 a MUC-1 vaccine, a vaccinia MUC-1. You see an
3 antitumor effect of established lung metastases with
4 three injections of MUC-1, but if you simply have
5 one injection, the first injection with a B-7
6 molecule involved, you see long-term immunity, and
7 these mice go on to live out their days.

8 Now, the question I want to dwell on
9 now, and this is the rest of the talk, is: will a
10 triad of co-stimulatory molecules, B-7, ICAM-1, and
11 LFA-3, enhance T cell activation to a new threshold?
12 Now, that is the question.

13 We chose these, again, because the
14 ligands are different, and the signaling is
15 different, and we have used the term TRICOM to mean
16 -- it's just an acronym for triad of co-stimulatory
17 molecules. So these are vaccines which have a
18 vector which has B-7, ICAM-1, and LFA-3.

19 So if you see vaccinia TRICOM, it is
20 this so that I don't have to say this over and over
21 again. If you see RVCEA TRICOM, it has four genes
22 in it, CEA and this, and AVIPOX virus is RF CEA
23 TRICOM.

24 Now, these are the vectors. They all
25 have different promoters, and these are the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 controls. Time doesn't allow me to go through all
2 of this, but this is what a recombinant vaccinia
3 TRICOM looks like; recombinant vaccinia CEA TRICOM
4 with the different promoters; and this is
5 recombinant fowl pox CEA TRICOM with the different
6 controls.

7 The first question we asked is: if we
8 infect cells with a TRICOM vector, will all of the
9 co-stimulatory molecules be expressed on the cell
10 surface? And the answer is yes. These results were
11 obtained five hours after infection of the tumor
12 cell.

13 So this is the assay that we used. I
14 actually explained it to you before. The antigen
15 presenting cell is the tumor. The responder cell is
16 the naive T cell, and we can use one of any kind of
17 signal 1. Most of the data I'll show you is with
18 Con A, and signal 2 is provided by either a TRICOM
19 vector or a vector containing two co-stimulatory
20 molecules or one B-7, being the current gold
21 standard, and we always use vector controls to show
22 that anything that we're doing is not related to
23 just the vector itself.

S A G CORP.

1 This is the data I showed you before,
2 the exact slide, the three co-stimulatory molecules
3 individually activating T cells.

4 This is the exact same data from the
5 same experiment, but I've added on here the TRICOM,
6 the one with the three co-stimulatory molecules, and
7 you can see there's a great deal more activation.

8 We asked the question now: can we
9 activate isolated CD-4 cells? Again, ICAM, LFA-3,
10 and B-7 alone; this is the TRICOM, to a much greater
11 threshold than we thought we would see.

12 This is CD-8 cells, purified CD-8 cells,
13 LFA-3, ICAM, B-7, and the TRICOM, and I want to draw
14 your attention to the low levels of antigen 1, which
15 is more like you would see physiologically. There
16 is essentially nothing going on here with the
17 standard co-stimulatory molecules, and this is what
18 one sees with the TRICOM.

19 And this is the same data plotted up,
20 but I've added in here a dual gene vector, B-7 and
21 ICAM. You see a little better than either one.

22 The point I want to make here, that it
23 is not additive. There's clearly something very
24 synergistic going on with having all of these three
25 expressed the same time.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And what we've seen is that the most
2 dramatic differences in stimulation of T cells by
3 TRICOM vectors are observed under conditions of low
4 levels of signal 1 and low APC to T cell ratios.
5 These are the kind of conditions one would see
6 physiologically, and we've seen stimulation of both
7 CD-8 and CD-4 cells.

8 Now, we also looked at the T cell
9 function in terms of cytokine. These are the
10 various vectors, and you can see in the CD-4 cells
11 we see a great increased production of IL-2, and in
12 the CD-8 cells with the TRICOM, the greatest
13 production is with interferon gamma, and there's a
14 whole range of cytokines. These are studies
15 conducted by Helen Sabzevari.

16 If you normalize for the reporter gene,
17 you can see here looking that compared to the B-7 or
18 any of the other single ones, the TRICOM stimulates
19 interferon gamma and IL-2 in CD-8 and CD-4 cells far
20 greater than any of the other co-stimulatory
21 molecules.

22 This is the actual cytokine release
23 profiles, the secretion, and again, you can see B-7,
24 which is the gold standard at this current time, as
25 compared to TRICOM in terms of IL-2 secretion by CD-

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 4 cells, and interferon gamma secretion by CD-8 T
2 cells.

3 And now I want to discuss dendritic
4 cells for a second. I wasn't going to talk about
5 this because these studies are so preliminary, but
6 with all of the dendritic cell mavins at this
7 meeting, I thought I would discuss this a little
8 bit.

9 Dendritic cells express, of course, co-
10 stimulatory molecules, high levels, and high levels
11 of MHC Class I and II. They are the ultimate
12 antigen presenting cell and the most potent
13 simulator of T cells.

14 We asked the question: can one use a
15 generic APC and infect it with one of these TRICOM
16 recombinant vectors to generate a cell similar to a
17 dendritic cell?

18 So the current methodology which we
19 followed is taking CD-34 murine bone marrow cells,
20 treating them with GM-CSF and IL-4 for six days to
21 get dendritic cells, and we asked: how would that
22 stack up against taking the same CD-34 bone marrow
23 cells and infecting them with TRICOM for five hours
24 and then seeing what kind of an APC we'd get?

S A G CORP.

1 And this is what we see. I'm sorry for
2 the legend here. I'll run you through this.

3 This is CD-4 cells as your responder
4 cells, and Con A is providing signal 1. If you take
5 CD-34 bone marrow cells, you see this type of
6 activation of T cells.

7 If you make dendritic cells from these,
8 you see this. So I guess this is the zebra and this
9 is the crocodile.

10 If you take these same CD-34 cells and
11 infect them with TRICOM, you see this: not quite as
12 good, but in the same range.

13 If you use CD-8s as your target, these
14 are your CD-34 bone marrow cells. These are these
15 cells treated for six days with GM-CSF and IL-4.
16 These are your dendritic cells, and these are these
17 same CD-34 cells treated for five hours with TRICOM
18 vector: a little better.

19 So you can see a potential use for this
20 right up front.

21 The next question we asked, and we
22 didn't think this experiment would work: can one
23 design a better APC than a dendritic cell?

24 You have CD-34 bone marrow cells. You
25 treat them with GM-CSF and IL-4 to obtain the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 dendritic cells. We then ask if one takes these
2 dendritic cells and treats them with TRICOM, would
3 you get some better cell.

4 This is the exact same data I showed you
5 on the previous slide. This is the CD-34 cell.
6 This is the dendritic cell. This is the dendritic
7 cell transfected with TRICOM. This is CD-4 as the
8 responder cell. These are CD-8 responder cells.
9 This is the CD-34 bone marrow cells, the CD-34 cells
10 treated with GM-CSF and IL-4 for six days, your
11 dendritic cells, and this is not chopped liver.
12 This is 50,000 counts.

13 This is this dendritic cell then treated
14 with TRICOM.

15 The next question we wanted to ask was,
16 going back to recombinant vaccines, all the work
17 that we've shown to date has been using naive T
18 cells as responder cells, and there's a little
19 question in the literature as whether you really
20 need co-stimulation for memory cells. If you have a
21 memory cell, do you have to co-stimulate or co-
22 stimulate doesn't matter?

23 So we looked at both naive T cells, T
24 cells for mice immunized with CEA, and also
25 established cell lines, and we've done all of these

S A G CORP.

1 types of ways to deliver signal. It really doesn't
2 matter.

3 This is just a preliminary piece of
4 data. These studies are ongoing where we take C-57
5 mice; we vaccinate them one time with ten to the
6 seventh plaque forming units, one injection of CEA
7 or CEA TICOM.

8 We waited for 100 days, and then we
9 challenged them with tumors expressing CEA, a large
10 dose of tumors, and you can see there's clearly
11 induction of immunologic memory.

12 And we looked then to see what about
13 proliferation of T cells in terms of looking at
14 these mice splenocytes, and again, you can see that
15 the TRICOM gives you a much more robust response
16 than the standard vaccinia CEA, but these are just
17 the premises for this.

18 The question we wanted to ask is: can
19 you use these type of vectors and triple co-
20 stimulatory molecules to stimulate memory cells?

21 And what we did was we took C-57 black
22 mice. We injected them with Avipox vector and
23 waited 40 days and took out the T cells, and those
24 are the CEA immune T cells. We also have naive T
25 cells, control.

S A G CORP.

1 And here we see the antigen presenting
2 cell is a CEA positive tumor. This is a CEA
3 negative tumor, with these various co-stimulatory
4 molecules in them, and what we can see here is that
5 we get very, very good stimulation of memory cells,
6 much better than we would see with B-7.

7 There is something here. It's just that
8 the scale is so large that it's reduced, but there
9 is some stimulation here, but much more stimulation
10 with TRICOM.

11 We then asked: can we stimulate
12 established cell lines, so-called defector cells?
13 And again, here we have an APC, a tumor cell, and
14 then we take cells and this is a tumor cell infected
15 here with a fowl pox vector expressing these various
16 genes.

17 And we asked: can we stimulate an
18 established T cell line directed against CEA? Well,
19 if you just put fowl pox CEA in there, you get no
20 stimulation because there's no second signal on your
21 antigen presenting cell, on your tumor.

22 You put in B-7. You get better
23 stimulation as expected, but you still get even
24 better stimulation with this TRICOM vector. So,

S A G CORP.

1 again, we can stimulate now naive T cells, memory T
2 cells, and affecter T cells.

3 So in closing I want to mention that the
4 classical notion of post stimulation where you have
5 two signals, hence co-stimulation, is now perhaps
6 we're looking at a different mechanism here where
7 we're dealing with four signals, four different
8 ligands, and four different signal transduction
9 processes in some of type of hyper stimulation.

10 I just want to touch on at the very end
11 -- I'm going to show no more data -- that these are
12 some potential uses for these vectors, for these
13 constructs.

14 The first is vector based vaccines. One
15 can take ALVAC recombinant and put a tumor antigen
16 in them with the TRICOM as I've shown you.

17 The other is the infection of whole
18 tumor cell vaccines. There's really no reason why
19 the generic -- no tumor antigen here -- but the
20 generic triple post stimulatory vector cannot be put
21 into carcinoma or melanoma cells either in culture
22 for five hours or direct injection at the tumor
23 site.

24 Infection of dendritic cells, either
25 peptide pulsed dendritic cells or dendritic cells

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 infected with a vector to enhance the potential of T
2 cell post stimulation by a dendritic.

3 And finally, the simple in vitro
4 activation of CD-8s or CD-4 cells by using antigen
5 presenting cells infected with these TRICOM vectors.

6 So to what limits can one employ co-
7 stimulation to enhance T cell activation? My answer
8 is, and this is just a hypothesis at this point
9 because we need much more data, that new levels of
10 co-stimulation can now be achieved with recombinant
11 vectors containing three co-stimulatory molecules to
12 stimulate T cells to a new threshold of activity.

13 Thank you for your attention.

14 (Applause.)

15 DR. SIEGEL: Thank you very much.

16 Our next talk is from Jay Berzofsky at
17 the Cancer Institute, who will discuss his work
18 regarding optimization of antigen specific T cell
19 responses using epitope enhancement.

20 DR. BERZOFSKY: I'd like to thank all of
21 the organizers for inviting me, and in the interest
22 of time go to the first slide.

23 I'm going to talk about optimization of
24 antigen specific T cell responses for antitumor and
25 antiviral activity. This is the work of a large

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 number of collaborators, as you can see listed here,
2 and I'll try to mention individual names as I go
3 along.

4 And I'd like to talk about three issues
5 or points. One is that CTL avidity is important for
6 efficacy and clearing viral infections and may be so
7 for tumor immunotherapy, as well.

8 Second, that natural viral and tumor CTL
9 epitopes may not have optimal affinity for MHC
10 molecules. Can these epitopes be enhanced to
11 produce more potent engineering vaccines and how can
12 we do that?

13 And third, can mutations in P-53 in rats
14 found in tumors service tumor antigens to evoke CTL
15 and kill tumor cells, and can we apply these
16 principles?

17 So by avidity what I mean is sensitivity
18 to very low doses of very low densities of peptide
19 MHC complex, and I don't know if you can see this
20 red curve here with the amount of light on the
21 screen, but if you look at a dose response curve for
22 antigen on a log scale here for recognition by CTL,
23 Martha Alexander Miller was able to raise CTL
24 specific for the same peptide MHC complex, but with
25 very different uveitides. The CTL line on the far

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 left in red sees antigen at more than two logs lower
2 concentration than the lower avidity CTL line shown
3 in yellow on the right, and there's some
4 intermediate ones in the middle.

5 Now, in data I won't have time to show,
6 she found that, in fact, the high and low avidity
7 cells would kill targets infected with recombinant
8 vaccinia expressing the antigen. In this case it's
9 HIV GP-160.

10 And so we asked whether these would be
11 equally efficacious in clearing virus in vivo, and
12 of course, we couldn't use HIV in mice. We used the
13 recombinant vaccine from Pederro and Bernie Moss,
14 expressing GP-160.

15 And to test this, she adoptive
16 transferred these different lines into Skid mice
17 that have no T or B cells of their own and infected
18 those mice with the recombinant vaccinia and asked
19 what level of virus was found several days later,
20 and you can see this is on plaque forming units of
21 virus per gram of tissue on a log scale.

22 The white bar are the Skid mice that
23 received no CTL adoptively transferred, and you see
24 that the low avidity CTL transferred either the red
25 or the yellow, two different low avidity lines, had

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 little or no effect on the level of virus, whereas
2 the high avidity line shown in green gave us more
3 than three log reduction in virus PFU, and this is
4 reproducible with multiple independently derived
5 high and low avidity lines.

6 So this indicates that the quality of
7 the CTL is at least as important as the quantity of
8 the CTL in clearing virus, and that may be true for
9 tumors as well, and so this may have important
10 implications for adoptive immunotherapy, for
11 example, selecting high avidity TILs rather than
12 TILs grown nonspecifically with cytokines and, for
13 example, trying to develop vaccines that would
14 selectively expand high avidity CTL.

15 Okay. The second point that I wanted to
16 discuss is trying to enhance the immunogenicity of
17 epitopes. Viral and tumor epitopes are not
18 necessarily the best immunogens. If anything, they
19 may have evolved to escape the immune system. So
20 can we make them better?

21 And the idea is illustrated here in this
22 crystal structure of a peptide bound to a Class I
23 molecule from Ian Wilson's lab in which the peptide
24 is shown in blue, and we're looking at side chains

1 in pink of amino acids of the MHC molecule that are
2 interacting with the peptide.

3 The view that we're looking at is what
4 we think is the view that the T cell receptor would
5 see looking down on the surface of the peptide MHC
6 complex, and the idea is that if we can modify the
7 side chains of amino acids that interact with the
8 MHC molecule in such a way as to improve the
9 affinity of the MHC molecule without changing this
10 surface that's pointing outward toward us, that the
11 T cell receptor sees, then we may have a more potent
12 immunogen that will still induce T cells that will
13 see the natural peptide MHC complex since if it
14 doesn't see that, it's not very useful.

15 And so we applied this in several cases
16 both for Class I and Class II. The first case I'll
17 just illustrate briefly. It's based on work that we
18 did actually about five or six years ago, done by
19 Toshitaka Akatsuka in our lab in collaboration with
20 Henning Binkey in Ron Jermain's lab in which we
21 found that we could enhance the affinity of a helper
22 epitope shown here in green from the HIV envelope by
23 replacing this positively charged E-glutamic acid --
24 sorry -- negatively charged E-glutamic acid with an
25 uncharged alanine A shown here in blue.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And so we asked whether this would
2 improve the efficacy of this helper epitope for
3 inducing CTL against the CTL epitope from the HIV
4 envelope shown in yellow that we had also
5 characterized in our lab.

6 When the CTL epitope itself was not
7 modified, we were only modifying the helper epitope
8 that we attached to that in this synthetic vaccine
9 construct, and this is work by Jeff Ailers in the
10 lab. Indeed, that was the case.

11 You can see in the open circles the CTL
12 induced by the original vaccine construct and in the
13 triangles the CTL induced by this improved second
14 generation construct, and it requires 33-fold fewer
15 effector cells in this effector to target ratio
16 titration to get the same level of lysis when we
17 immunize with this improved vaccine.

18 So that means there are 33-fold more
19 lytic units if you compare these curves
20 horizontally, and in data I won't have time to show
21 Jeff did genetic experiments to compare strains of
22 mice that have the same Class I molecule to present
23 the CTL epitope, but different Class I molecule --
24 Class II molecule, rather, presenting the helper
25 epitope to prove that, in fact, the mechanism of

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 this was, indeed, Class II MHC length and due to the
2 higher affinity for the Class II MHC molecule.

3 So this demonstrates two points. One is
4 that helper T cells are very important; CD-4 helper
5 T cells are very important for inducing a Class I
6 CD-8 cytotoxic T cell response. So that by just
7 improving the level of Class II restricted help we
8 can get a big increase in Class I restricted CTL
9 even though we haven't tampered with the CTL epitope
10 at all.

11 And secondly, this is proof of principle
12 of this approach we call epitope enhancement for
13 trying to improve vaccines, but this was done with
14 the Class II molecule, and it was done in the mouse,
15 and we wanted to know if we could do the same thing
16 with the Class I molecule in a particular one that
17 came from humans.

18 And so I'll now tell you about a more
19 recent study done by Pable Sarobe in the lab with a
20 number of collaborators listed here that was just
21 published in JCI trying to improve the binding to
22 HLA-A2 of an epitope that we had identified earlier
23 in the hepatitis C virus core protein that binds to
24 A2 with an affinity that's adequate for inducing
25 cytotoxic t cells in patients infected with the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 virus, but was still modest affinity and had room
2 for improvement.

3 And this is the wild-type peptide at the
4 top. Dave Pendleton in the lab made it the large
5 series of substituted peptides shown here, and Pablo
6 tested all of these both for binding to HLA-A2,
7 which I won't have time to show you, and for
8 recognition by human cytotoxic T cells from an HCV
9 infected patient that he had raised, and you can see
10 this is a dose response curve for some of the
11 peptides, the alanine substituted peptides. The
12 wild-type peptide is shown in green in the middle.

13 Many of the substitutions reduced
14 activity, but for two of the substitutions the dose
15 response curve was shifted to the left, i.e., we had
16 about a tenfold enhancement in potency, but what we
17 really wanted to know was would these be more
18 immunogenic in vivo.

19 And before going into some kind of human
20 clinical trial, we wanted to use an animal model and
21 were fortunate to have HLA-A2 transgenic mice from
22 our collaborator Vic Englehart that Pablo immunized,
23 and here we're looking at the response to either
24 immunization with the wild-type peptide shown in
25 green or several of these modified peptides that had

S A G CORP.

1 higher affinity, and one of them in particular, the
2 8-alanine substituted peptide, was more immunogenic
3 in the A2 transgenic mice.

4 So we wanted to know if the CTO we
5 induced against this 8-alanine substituted peptide
6 were of as good quality as those induced against the
7 wild-type peptide for killing of targets expressing
8 the wild-type peptide.

9 And that's tested here where we compared
10 a CTL line raised against the wild-type peptide and
11 tested on targets with the wild-type peptide shown
12 here in a dose response curve with a CTL line raised
13 against the enhanced peptide with the 8-alanine
14 substitution, but tested in vitro on the wild-type
15 peptide shown in red.

16 And you can see that this actually has
17 several logs higher avidity than the CTR raised
18 against the wild-type peptide itself. So we had CTR
19 that were increased not only in quantity, but also
20 in quality by this approach.

21 So we conclude with regard to this
22 approach of epitope enhancement that we've been
23 working on now for about six or seven years that
24 natural epitopes are not always optimal, but can be
25 enhanced by sequence modifications to increase the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 binding to murine or human Class I and Class II MHC
2 molecules.

3 A selected subset of these modified
4 peptides retain recognition by T cell specific for
5 the natural epitope and are substantially more
6 immunogenic for inducing helper T cells or CTL in
7 vivo.

8 And I'd like to point out that these
9 enhanced epitopes can make more potent vaccines
10 whether they're used as synthetic peptides, as I
11 illustrated, or incorporated as sequence
12 modifications in the gene for the whole protein and
13 used in recombinant protein or in naked DNA vaccines
14 or in recombinant viral vector vaccines or even in
15 live attenuated viral vaccines, where one can cite
16 directed mutants in the virus.

17 So this approach of epitope enhancement
18 is certainly not limited to peptide vaccines, but
19 could be applied to any type of vaccine construct.

20 Okay. Now, the third area is to talk
21 about the use of mutant tumor suppressor genes and
22 oncogene products as targets, potential tumor
23 antigen targets, for immunotherapy, and the idea was
24 that single point mutations in P-53 that occur
25 commonly in tumors or RAS that occur commonly in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 tumors or others like that might create neoantigenic
2 determinants that could be recognized by the immune
3 system as distinguishing markers present uniquely in
4 the tumor and not in the normal tissue in which the
5 mutation did not occur, and we might be able to
6 raise cytotoxic T cells against these by immunizing
7 with short synthetic peptides just surrounding the
8 mutation so that we would not induce T cells that
9 would see the wild-type protein that's present in
10 the normal cells.

11 And for the sake of time, I'll skip over
12 the in vitro studies that are published and go
13 directly to an immunotherapy study in mice. this
14 was done by Dimetri Gabrilovich in Dave Carbone's
15 lab in collaboration with us, and you can see that
16 here we're immunizing with peptide post dendritic
17 cells, which is an approach that we had used first
18 again about six or seven years ago with HIV peptides
19 to induce high levels of CTL.

20 And here you can see complete inhibition
21 of tumor growth by multiple peptide post dendritic
22 cell immunizations compared to either a single
23 immunization or no immunizations.

24 Similar results have been obtained in
25 other labs. For example, this study from Mike

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Lotze's lab looking at the Meth. A sarcoma which has
2 a P-53 mutation, immunizing with dendritic cells
3 post with a mutant peptide, you can again inhibit
4 the growth or cause regression of established
5 tumors.

6 The other study I just showed you I
7 should have pointed out was also an established
8 tumor before we started immunizing.

9 In contrast, you can see the dendritic
10 cells post with the wild-type peptide or post with
11 no peptide had no effect on tumor growth.

12 So we have been involved in a Phase I
13 clinical trial that is done with a large number of
14 collaborators, with Chuck Smith and David Contoise
15 in our lab; with Dave Carbone and John Menna in
16 Dallas and Vanderbilt; and with Mike Kelly and a
17 large number of collaborators working with him in
18 the Medicine Branch here at NCI; and with a lot of
19 help from other people in other parts of NCI, Morris
20 Kelsey and Jay Greenblatt and their co-workers, and
21 a number of others.

22 And I'll just show you one example here
23 of specificity that we can induce in some cancer
24 patients with P-53 mutations, first of all.

S A G CORP.

1 This is a patient who had on CTL
2 specific for his mutation prior to immunization, but
3 at 11 weeks and 46 weeks after starting of
4 immunization, here we're looking at level of gamma
5 interferon response. You can see that the response
6 to the mutant P-53 peptide shown in the solid bars
7 has a magnitude that is a substantial fraction of
8 the magnitude we see to whole flu virus, which has
9 multiple epitopes, and here we're just looking at
10 one epitope. So for single epitope that's quite a
11 substantial response.

12 Whereas there's no response at all --
13 you can't even see the bars here -- to the wild-type
14 peptide. So this is exquisitely specific for the
15 mutation and, therefore, would not see normal cells
16 at all, which is the goal we were trying to achieve.

17 Now, we wanted to know if these would
18 kill tumor cells expressing mutant P-53, and in this
19 trial we weren't able to get autologous tumor to
20 test, but fortunately we now have finally been about
21 to obtain data along those lines in this very recent
22 study done by Sarah Gur and Hong Kung in Samir
23 Khlif's group working with our lab, and this is a
24 collaboration with Bernie Fox and Walter Urba from
25 the West Coast, who have immunized in this case a

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 breast cancer patient with breast cancer cells that
2 were transfected with the co-stimulatory molecule
3 B-7 that you were just hearing about from Jeff
4 Schlom.

5 And these induced an immune response,
6 and we asked whether that immune response included a
7 response that was specific for a mutant P-53 that
8 was present in this breast cancer tumor.

9 And so you can see here that, indeed,
10 looking at autologous targets in either the absence
11 or presence of the mutant P-53 peptide, we get CTL
12 that are very specific for the mutant P-53. So we
13 asked whether these P-53 specific CTL would kill the
14 tumor cells.

15 And so we expanded CTL now with the
16 mutant peptide, and as a control, expanded CTL from
17 the same post immunization PBMC with flu, and you
18 can see that the CTL expanded with the mutant P-53
19 peptide will kill targets, kill the tumor cells as
20 targets, whereas those expanded with the control
21 antigen do not.

22 So these are mutant P-53 specific CTL
23 that are killing tumor cells expressing that
24 mutation.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, turning to RAS, for mutant RAS we
2 have a more limited number of mutations occurring
3 most commonly at CODON 12 as listed here, and these
4 have been studied by Chuck Smith in our lab for
5 binding to HLA molecules, and he found that these
6 bind with a moderate affinity to HLA-A2, but an
7 affinity in the range that people have seen for
8 other antigens that are recognized by human T cells.

9 And, in fact, you can see that this
10 segment containing the mutation has a classic HLA-A2
11 binding motif with a leucine at position 2 and a
12 valine at the C terminus, and we've immunized
13 patients as part of this trial with the various
14 mutant RAS peptides corresponding to the mutation in
15 their tumor.

16 Here's an example of one patient who
17 made a CTL response to RAS-12 CIS, a peptide we call
18 PR-18, and you can see quite a high specific lysis
19 compared to controlled targets with no peptide.

20 And, again, in this trial we were not
21 able to get autologous tumor to test this target,
22 but there are now two publications in the literature
23 that show that, in fact, these mutant RAS peptides
24 are presented on tumor cells and can be the targets
25 of CTL.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 One of these is from Abrams, et al., a
2 study from Jeff Schlom's lab done in collaboration
3 with Samir Khelif in Medicine Branch, and they were
4 able to induce CTL that will kill colon carcinoma
5 cells expressing HLA-A2 and this RAS-12 mutant
6 peptide shown here, whereas the CTL specific for
7 MART-1 as a control do not.

8 And Gjertsen, et al., from Norway have
9 shown similarly that this same RAS-12 valine mutant
10 peptide is also presented by HLA-B35, and CTL raised
11 against this will kill autologous tumor cells
12 expressing B-35, as well as allogeneic tumor cells
13 that share HLA-B35 but not B-35 negative tumor
14 cells.

15 So you can see that these mutant RAS
16 peptides are presented with at least two different
17 human Class I molecules on tumor cells and can make
18 those tumor cells the targets for lysis by CTL that
19 are raised by vaccines.

20 So in conclusion and in summary, high
21 avidity CTL are more effective at clearing viral
22 infection than low avidity CTL, and the same may
23 apply to adoptive immunotherapy of cancer and may be
24 important for designing vaccines both for viruses
25 and for cancer.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Epitope enhancement by sequence
2 modification allows production of more potent
3 vaccines by increasing affinity of peptides for
4 Class I or Class II MHC molecules, and you saw proof
5 of principle of this.

6 In murine models, vaccines consisting of
7 dendritic cells presenting mutant P-53 peptides can
8 elicit specific CTL and treat established tumors,
9 and in humans, mutations in P-53 and RAS found in
10 human tumors can serve as tumor as antigens.
11 Vaccines specific for these mutations can elicit
12 human CTL that kill human tumors expressing the
13 corresponding mutant protein.

14 And so we have a case now where we can
15 try to apply this approach of epitope enhancement,
16 which we're doing now in these cases, to try to
17 enhance the immunogenicity of these peptides, and we
18 can try to use measures to elicit higher avidity CTL
19 to improve the efficacy of cancer immunotherapy as
20 we are trying to do for viral therapy as well.

21 And you saw an example of this that
22 Steve Rosenberg presented earlier from some recent
23 data of their lab where they've been able to apply
24 epitope enhancement to a GP-100 peptide.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So I think that these same general
2 principles that have been developed originally for
3 viral antigens will apply to tumor antigens and can
4 perhaps produce more effective vaccines.

5 Thank you.

6 (Applause.)

7 DR. SZNOL: Thanks, Jay.

8 I'd like to introduce the next speaker,
9 Dr. Nicholas Restifo from the Surgery Branch to talk
10 about cancer therapy using a self-replicating RNA
11 vaccine.

12 Nick.

13 DR. RESTIFO: Thank you, Mario, and
14 thank you, Raj, for inviting me to this meeting.

15 I'd like to talk to you today about the
16 work that we're doing in trying to develop mouse
17 models that will help us sort through this dizzying
18 array of possibilities that we have for cancer
19 vaccines for use in the clinic.

20 Now, it's my belief and since I started
21 in on these efforts almost ten years ago that mouse
22 models can be predictive for the clinic. Some mouse
23 models, however, may be more predictive than others,
24 and I think the quality, the ability of a mouse

1 model to predict what's going to happen in the
2 clinic requires a certain number of things.

3 First of all, I think a focus on
4 treatment of tumors rather than their prevention.
5 It's a rare chance that we have of being able to
6 guess a patient that's going to develop a cancer,
7 and much more of a common occurrence where we're
8 trying to therapeutically vaccinate a patient.

9 The other thing is to choose the right
10 antigens to study, and so I'm going to focus on our
11 recent efforts in this direction and focus my
12 comments on developing vaccines in a mouse model
13 where we use self-antigens, melanocyte
14 differentiation antigens.

15 You've heard earlier from Dr. Rosenberg
16 efforts at cloning the antigens that are recognized
17 by antitumor T lymphocytes. So I won't spend much
18 time on that.

19 These antigens are generally melanocyte
20 site differentiation antigens, and interestingly,
21 many of these antigens are involved in the
22 generation of the actual pigment, melanin. They're
23 enzymes, such as TRP-2, further down the line GP-
24 100, TRP-1, and tyrosinase that are involved in the
25 actual pigment formation.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, there are a lot of reasons why we
2 think these are good antigens, but there's one
3 reason why they're not, and that is tolerance, the
4 problem of immune tolerance against nonmutated self-
5 antigens.

6 So to more directly look at this
7 question of tolerance, we've done a number of
8 things. Specifically, we have cloned the homologs
9 of the human melanoma antigens in the mouse. So
10 these enzymes have remarkable homology between the
11 mouse and the human.

12 And by using the actual mouse antigens,
13 we're able to, I think, more accurately model the
14 situation of what we're trying to accomplish in
15 patients.

16 Now, a number of things have been done.
17 One of them is to identify, now, the genes in the
18 mouse and to study the knockouts in some cases of
19 these genes, where we can study situations where
20 these antigens are present and when they're absent
21 in the mouse.

22 Now, here's a listing of these antigens:
23 tyrosinase, TRP-1, TRP-2, GP-100, MART-1, listed
24 together with the mouse loci corresponding to these

S A G CORP.

1 genes and alternative names which you may have read
2 in the literature.

3 This is a photo of some mice which are
4 knocked out for GP-100, which have a variable
5 phenotype, some of which have this nearly albino
6 appearance, and for TRP-1, which have this more --
7 which Chris Tulukien who's heading this effort calls
8 a capuccino phenotype.

9 (Laughter.)

10 DR. RESTIFO: We have a lot of coffee
11 going around in the lab.

12 So this is very interesting. These are
13 really on a C-57 black 6 background and he's
14 breeding those.

15 And so these mice are going to give us
16 some interesting insights, I think, into the
17 development of or the issues of tolerance in these
18 mice.

19 Now, using vectors constructed with the
20 mouse homologs of these melanocyte differentiation
21 antigens, we've attempted to do a number of things
22 in normal, nonmanipulated C-57 black mice. One of
23 them was to generate CTL, which we've been able to
24 do against mouse GP-100. I won't go into the
25 details of this. It was recently published in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Journal of Experimental Medicine, in work done by
2 Villum Overwick in the lab, where he was able to
3 generate CTL.

4 Another one of these, the vaccinia
5 viruses that he built in collaboration with Bernie
6 Moss, the murine TRP-1 had a different effect, and
7 it induced a profound co-color changes in the C-57
8 black 6 mice where you see this vitiligo-like
9 syndrome, sometimes in a dermatomal distribution,
10 but you can see a real heterogeneity in the
11 induction of vitiligo similar to what we see in the
12 patients.

13 Now, the fur on these mice is absolutely
14 snow white, as you can see, and reminds us a lot of
15 some of the patients who successfully respond to
16 Interleukin-2. Here you see this patch of light
17 hair and light skin.

18 And also, in patients, as mentioned by
19 Dr. Rosenberg earlier, we see inflammatory regions,
20 inflammatory areas surrounding either moles or
21 regressing melanoma lesions. Here we see a
22 vitiligo, patch of vitiligo around those.

23 Now, so what I'd like to focus my
24 comments on is what these animal models predict for
25 the future of recombinant and synthetic anti-cancer

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 vaccines. I mentioned the effectiveness of
2 targeting melanocyte differentiation antigens.

3 Those vitiligo mice are absolutely
4 protected from challenge with B-16. The GP-100 CTL
5 I showed you earlier can be adoptively transferred
6 to mice bearing established B-16 pulmonary E. mets.
7 (phonetic), and they can be used to treat. So we
8 feel that these are valid antigens for targets,
9 which we can use our vectors to target.

10 But specifically now, in terms of the
11 form of the antigen, Jay Berzofsky, I think, was way
12 out in front in describing the use of these so-
13 called anchor fixed antigens, that is, antigens
14 whose ability to bind to MHC molecules can be
15 improved by altering their amino acid composition.

16 We have also explored the efficacy of
17 endoplasmic reticulum insertion signal sequences
18 both in recombinant and synthetic immunogens, that
19 is, putting the right antigen in the right
20 intracellular compartment, which for Class I is the
21 endoplasmic reticulum, and finally, the important
22 role for self-replicating nucleic acids.

23 Now, I'm just going to briefly touch on
24 our efforts at anchor fixing, that is, specifically
25 to increase the binding of the peptide to the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 restricting Class I molecule without inhibiting its
2 ability to bind to the T cell receptor that
3 recognizes it.

4 Using these approaches, we found a
5 naturally occurring anchor fixed epitope, the mouse
6 versus the human form of GP-100 in mice, in C-57
7 black 6 mice. The GP-100, 25 to 33, in the mouse
8 differs in three amino acids from the human, but
9 that difference increases the binding to D of B
10 significantly. The human binds much better, and
11 that's all been reported in HR Medicine, and that
12 seems to be an excellent way of breaking tolerance
13 against GP-100.

14 We've recently reported in HR Medicine
15 our efforts at altering the second position of the
16 209 epitope, which significantly increases its
17 binding to HLA-A2 and some other examples.

18 Now, using these altered peptides,
19 either the 209 or the 209-2M, in the form of a
20 recombinant fowl pox virus with a form of modified
21 GP-100, and this work done in collaboration with the
22 Thereon Corporation, something we hope to get into
23 patients, we've modified the human GP-100 at two
24 positions, the 209 at the 2M position and the 280 at
25 the 9V position.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 But you can see here in a transgenic
2 mouse situation immunization with the modified form
3 of the recombinant fowl pox virus significantly
4 increases its ability to generate CTL not only
5 against the modified form of the 209 epitope, but
6 against the wild-type form of the 209 epitope as
7 well.

8 I'd like to comment now about the
9 introduction of antigens into the endoplasmic
10 reticulum. This is a diagram showing the transport
11 of antigens from the site, as all three of the TAP
12 transporters into the ER, but it's also possible to
13 by pass these TAP transporters by using ER insertion
14 signal sequences, and this work was done in
15 collaboration with John Udall and Jack Bennick of
16 the NIAID.

17 What we've done is we've used an
18 insertion signal sequence from the E-3-19K protein
19 of the adenovirus and attached that to the modified
20 form of 209-2M.

21 Now, used in a mini-gene form is another
22 construct that we're very excited about. We plan on
23 exploring the use of this recombinant pox virus,
24 specifically with emphasis on the fowl pox virus, in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 patients with melanoma, again, another construct
2 built for us by the folks at Thereon.

3 Using the ES sequence together with the
4 GP-100, the 25 to 33 epitope, again, you can see
5 that we can do things with the ES modified peptide
6 that we can't do with the native peptide.

7 So, again, you can see there are many
8 combinations of using anchor fixed peptides alone or
9 in combination with ER insertion signal sequences.

10 Now, the final part of my talk, I'd like
11 to comment about the different vectors that we have
12 available to us. Using these, the mouse homologs of
13 the human differentiation antigens, we've
14 constructed a number of different recombinant
15 viruses, including vaccinia viruses, fowl pox
16 viruses, their nonreplicating cousins, transfectant,
17 so-called transfectant Influenza A viruses,
18 transfectant because you add an additional really
19 chromosome into the flu virus, and recombinant
20 adenoviruses.

21 Now, we've also begun to look at other
22 forms of the antigen, including naked DNA in a
23 number of forms, as well as Baculovirus proteins,
24 and you've heard about the synthetic peptide
25 efforts.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, we've heard also quite a bit about
2 dendritic cells, one of the cells we think is
3 central. This is where we're trying to get our
4 various vaccines, our recombinant and synthetic
5 anti-cancer vaccines.

6 The evidence that we have that dendritic
7 cells are the active cell in the use of recombinant
8 pox virus comes from evidence where we were trying
9 to optimize the promoters that we were using in our
10 recombinant pox viruses.

11 We used promoters. Now, the number here
12 is the relative amount of our model antigen, beta-
13 GAL that was produced if you use the P-7.5 promoter
14 as one. We had promoters that could produce 300
15 times more beta-GAL than the normal 7.5 promoters.
16 These are synthetic promoters in vaccinia virus, but
17 those weren't the most powerful promoters in
18 treating tumors.

19 It was the early promoters, even if they
20 were relatively weak compared to the late promoters,
21 and that had to do with their activity in dendritic
22 cells.

23 In the use of pox viruses though, I
24 think in some ways we're a victim of our own
25 success. Vaccinia virus was used in the successful

S A G CORP.

1 eradication of smallpox essentially from the face of
2 the world. It's only around now in a couple of
3 labs, probably more labs than we think perhaps, but
4 the vaccinia virus eradication program, the
5 eradication of smallpox was a profound success.

6 But people remember that vaccination
7 even if they got it 50 or 60 years ago, and the
8 neutralizing antibodies, the preexisting antibodies
9 against vaccinia virus survive in our patient
10 population. Any patients older than about 30
11 generally have these neutralizing titers.

12 Now, the titers against fowl pox virus,
13 except maybe in a few chicken farmers, are
14 relatively low, and so we have focused our efforts
15 on the recombinant vaccines on the fowl pox virus.

16 But the general problem of vector
17 associated proteins is a real one. Vaccinia virus
18 expresses over 200 genes, and there's going to be
19 immunity that's going to prevent the repeated use of
20 these vectors.

21 And you can see that Influenza A, a
22 relatively small virus with eight genes and eight
23 gene products, ten -- sorry -- gene products, is
24 smaller, but there's still vector associated
25 protein.

S A G CORP.

1 So we've aimed our sights at naked DNA
2 as an immunogen. Now, we believe that naked DNA
3 works in much the same way. In a collaboration with
4 Ron Jermain and Angel Porgidore, we've explored
5 exactly how these plasmids work, and we feel and
6 have published recently that bone marrow derived
7 antigen presenting cells are the likely targets for
8 these nucleic acid vaccines.

9 But there may be some role for the
10 regurgitation of antigen or even the direct
11 expression of antigens in transfected myocytes, for
12 example, after intramuscular injection.

13 We have in collaboration with folks at
14 VICAL initiated a clinical trial where we use a
15 modified form of the human GP-100 with the 209-2M
16 modification, the 280-9V modifications in patients,
17 and there are a lot of things you can do to optimize
18 a vector.

19 You can remove the three prime and five
20 prime untranslated regions. You can optimize the
21 promoter. You can introduce nuclear processing
22 signals to make these vectors better, controlling
23 the polyadenylation sequence.

24 But we may have to make these vectors
25 even better. There are two major problems that we

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 see with the use of these vectors in the current
2 technology. One is the efficiency with which the
3 vectors get into the appropriate cells, antigen
4 presenting cells. That's the first one.

5 But the second one is the power. Do
6 these vectors have the kind of power that the viral
7 vectors have? And they clearly don't if you compare
8 them with the recombinant viruses that we're using
9 in preclinical studies.

10 So what we've done is we've developed a
11 replicase-based vector. Now, this is an attempt to
12 make DNA more similar to a viral infection. What
13 we've done is -- and this is all work really
14 spearheaded by Han Ying in the lab and how he's
15 recently been joined by Wolfgang Leitner -- where a
16 CMV promoter is placed in front of a replicase gene
17 derived from alpha viruses, either Sembis virus or
18 Semliki Forest virus.

19 That replicase gene is then able to copy
20 an RNA, a positive stranded RNA into a negative
21 stranded RNA and back again, and this can lead to
22 massive amplification of the RNA.

23 You can also use just an RNA form of
24 this virus, and in that case you don't need a CMV
25 promoter where you insert the replicase complex.

S A G CORP.

1 We've constructed all of the appropriate
2 controls for these vectors, and when we measure
3 their ability to induce CTL, we see something that
4 we don't see with conventional plasma DNA vectors,
5 the ability to induce specific CTL at extremely low
6 concentrations of RNA shown on this slide.

7 So in submicrogram levels of RNA, we can
8 induce a specific antigen recognition of these tumor
9 targets or peptide pulsed tumor targets.

10 Furthermore, something that we don't see
11 with conventional plasma DNA, we can see treatment
12 of established tumor with an increase in survival,
13 and not shown here a decrease in the number of
14 pulmonary mets.

15 We developed this replicase-based
16 plasmid, RNA and DNA immunogens, with the goal of
17 increasing the antigen production, but when we
18 measured the amount of antigen that was actually
19 produced, it was just a little more than twofold
20 more antigen compared with a conventional optimized
21 plasmid, just a little better. So we had to look
22 for other reasons why it was better.

23 When we actually measured the
24 production, however, we saw that the cells were
25 almost uniformly dying quantitatively after this,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and this death was apoptotic, and you could inhibit
2 that death or at least delay it by the addition of
3 CAS-based inhibitors.

4 CAS-based are enzymes that are involved
5 in signal transduction in the mediation of apoptotic
6 death.

7 Now, we've heard a lot yesterday about
8 apoptotic cells and how they may feed into dendritic
9 cells, and we think this might be a clue to why
10 these vectors work better, but there are clearly a
11 number of potential effector mechanisms why the
12 replicase-based nucleic acid vaccines are more
13 effective.

14 And so what do animal models predict for
15 the future of recombinant and synthetic anti-cancer
16 vaccines? They predict the effectiveness of
17 targeting melanocyte differentiation antigens, I
18 think a point that's been borne out in the clinical
19 studies.

20 They predict the use of anchor fixed
21 antigens that have increased binding to MHC.

22 They predict the efficacy of using
23 endoplasmic reticular insertion signal sequences to
24 put the right antigen in the right intracellular
25 compartment.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And they predict an important role for
2 the use of self-replicating nucleic acid vaccines.

3 Now, the cell might be the basic unit of
4 life, but the bench researcher is the basic unit of
5 getting these results, and these are the people that
6 did the work: Mark Theore, Villum Overwick, Chris
7 Tulukien and Tanir Alweiss, Carie Ervine, Han Ying,
8 and Wolfgang Leitner, and Debbie Sermon, and we've
9 recently been joined by Peter Emtage.

10 And so I thank you for your attention.

11 (Applause.)

12 DR. SZNOL: Thank you.

13 The last speaker for this session I'd
14 like to introduce, Dr. Bernie Fox from the Earle
15 Chiles Cancer Research Center in Portland, Oregon.

16 Bernie.

17 DR. FOX: You did a great job. Now I
18 know why I've got gray hair. It's vitiligo.

19 (Laughter.)

20 DR. FOX: Too much immunology, too many
21 adjuvants.

22 What I'd like to do this afternoon is
23 tell you a story that's developed in my lab over the
24 last two years, and while a big focus of this
25 meeting has been on the antigens and on the vaccines

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and trying to characterize those, the focus of our
2 efforts have really been to try and understand the
3 effector mechanisms that are involved.

4 And it's kind of nice to follow Nick
5 because I think a lot of what we're looking at is
6 tolerance, and I hope that I can tell you by the end
7 of this talk that we think tolerance is also
8 involved in this mechanism, but it's a different
9 form of tolerance at least in the early stages, and
10 it's the form of immune deviation, where we think
11 it's the development of an ineffective or
12 nondestructive immune response that develops in
13 response to vaccination that sometimes biases the
14 immune response away from a therapeutic response.

15 If I can have the first slide.

16 So the goal of my laboratory has really
17 been to use adoptive immunotherapy as an approach to
18 identify the cells that mediate tumor regression
19 with the idea being that you could then induce these
20 cells in vivo without having to do adoptive
21 transfer.

22 The model that we've used is a model
23 that C.U. Shu developed while in Steve Rosenberg's
24 lab back in 1985, and it involves vaccinating
25 animals with a tumor and then seven to ten days

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 later removing the draining lymph node cells that
2 drain that tumor vaccine, and so you showed
3 initially that if you stimulate those cells with
4 tumor, you then can draw -- and provide low doses of
5 or high doses of IL-2 and then subsequently low
6 doses of IL-2 -- that you can generate cells that
7 were therapeutic and would recognize that tumor
8 specifically in vitro and make cytokines.

9 And the specificity was really conferred
10 by the vaccine, and so if you took lymph node cells
11 that drained a vaccine and stimulated them with
12 anti-CD-3 or subsequently with super antigens, the T
13 cells that come out are exquisitely specific for the
14 tumor that primed their generation initially in
15 vivo.

16 And this all works fine with weakly or
17 strong immunogenic tumors, but falls apart when you
18 use tumors that are more poorly or nonimmunogenic,
19 and that I'll define as an animal that's been
20 vaccinated with tumor, with an irradiated tumor, and
21 you come back and challenge 14 days later with a
22 minimal tumor dose. If that tumor grows
23 progressively, that's a nonimmunogenic tumor or
24 poorly immunogenic tumor.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 So when you do that in a poorly
2 immunogenic setting, you had to do something else
3 because the lymph node cells would never work, and
4 so what we did initially in collaboration with Fred
5 Chang and C.U. Shu and Windy Wahl and Gary Nable and
6 Greg Plautz who's here, we looked at an aloe
7 modification of that tumor vaccine and showed that
8 if you aloe modified the tumor, that the lymph node
9 cells that came out once you stimulated them with
10 anti-CD-3 and expanded them in lotuses of IL-2, they
11 were now therapeutic, and that was the basis for a
12 clinical trial that we've actually just finished.

13 So in background, the tumor we're going
14 to use in these studies is the D-5. It's a subclone
15 of B-16-BL6. It's poorly immunogenic in that
16 immunization fails to protect T cells from D-5.
17 Tumor vaccine draining lymph nodes are not
18 therapeutic.

19 However, when we went and looked at
20 them, we found out that those lymph node cells that
21 are nontherapeutic do down-regulate L-selectin, and
22 that's important because down-regulation of L-
23 selectin is a well established marker for recently
24 activated T cells and memory T cells.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And back in 1996, Kagamu, working in
2 C.U. Shu's lab, demonstrated that L-selectin low
3 tumor vaccine draining lymph nodes were enriched for
4 therapeutic T cells in a weakly immunogenic tumor
5 model.

6 So we went ahead and asked the question:
7 will these L-selectin low cells in the D-5 vaccine
8 model mediate tumor regression if we activate them
9 and adoptively transfer them?

10 And the model we used, again, was we
11 vaccinated animals and seven to eight days later
12 removed the lymph node cells, used the Milton E-
13 beads to separate the L-selectin low cells out from
14 there over a column so that you have total cells
15 here with a small percentage of cells expressing low
16 levels of L-selectin. This is looking at L-selectin
17 expression by FACS.

18 And you can separate those cells using
19 the beads into either low or high populations. We
20 went ahead and activated those cells with anti-CD-3,
21 expanded them in IL-2, and then tested their
22 activity.

23 And since this data was published in JI
24 back in September, I thought I'd just summarize it
25 by showing you here that when we take the D-5 tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 vaccine and look at the L-selectin low cells, after
2 expansion with anti-CD-3 and IL-2, they are
3 exquisitely specific for the tumor that primed them
4 in vivo, but they're not therapeutic. They're
5 exquisitely specific in that they make Type 2
6 cytokines. They make IL-4 and IL-10.

7 When you take our therapeutic vaccine
8 and look at the L-selectin low cells there, you find
9 that they make interferon gamma without making IL-4
10 or IL-10 and are specific and therapeutic.

11 So why hasn't someone already made this
12 observation that you see in these poorly
13 immunogenic, in this one poorly immunogenic tumor
14 model, these prime Type 2 cells?

15 And I think the reason was you need to
16 enrich for these sensitized cells to be able to pick
17 it up above the background, and so thinking about it
18 a little bit more, Hung Ming Hu, who's a Ph.D.
19 student in the lab, knew all of the data that's been
20 out there in the infectious disease literature and
21 the rest of the immunology literature that cytokines
22 derive uncommitted T cells to differentiate along
23 different paths, and if you use anti-IL-12 and anti-
24 interferon gamma and supply a source of Type 2

S A G CORP.

1 cytokine, IL-4, you can derive uncommitted T cells
2 to a Type 2 profile.

3 And you can do that in reverse and use
4 anti-IL-4 and a source of IL-12 or interferon gamma
5 to derive Type 1 cells, and that's been well
6 documented.

7 So we developed a hypothesis that it
8 would be possible to shift the tumor specific Type 2
9 response towards a Type 1 response that would
10 mediate tumor regression, and so the experiment was
11 set up like this.

12 Again, we took out the L-selectin low
13 cells from a D-5 vaccine, and we either cultured
14 them with anti-CD-3 and IL-2, as I showed you
15 before, or with anti-IL-4, IL-12, and IL-2.

16 And then we looked at their activity
17 both in vitro and in vivo. I'll first show you the
18 in vitro data.

19 What we're looking at here is interferon
20 gamma or IL-4 secretion. We're looking in picograms
21 per mL, and these are T cell stimulator with either
22 nothing, with specific tumor, with an unrelated
23 prostate cancer, which is on a black 6 background or
24 2C11.

S A G CORP.

1 And what you see is the black bars of
2 the D-5 vaccine draining lymph node cells, and you
3 can see they've got low levels of interferon gamma
4 and make IL-4. If you look at the ones that were
5 cultured in red with anti-IL-4 and IL-12, you can
6 see they're now polarized more towards the Type 1
7 and that they've got more interferon gamma
8 secretion, less IL-4 secretion, and they're getting
9 more comparable to our therapeutic vaccine, the D-
10 5K-D, which has got good levels of interferon gamma
11 and low levels of IL-4.

12 When you ask if these are therapeutic,
13 what you find is that the L-selectin low cells from
14 the D-5 vaccine don't mediate significant
15 therapeutic effects, but if you culture them with
16 anti-IL-4 and IL-12, you see this effect become more
17 prominent, and now it's highly significant, and
18 we've reproduced this in another model, the BALB C-4
19 T-1 model for breast cancer.

20 So in summary, what we've seen here is
21 that if you take the D-5 vaccine, which is
22 nontherapeutic normally, and if you take the L-
23 selectin low cells and culture them with anti-CD-3
24 and IL-2, that you get a tumor specific Type 2
25 response that's nontherapeutic, but if you culture

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 those same cells that were primed in vivo with an
2 ineffective vaccine with anti-IL-4 and IL-12, you
3 now get a Type 1 immune response which is
4 therapeutic.

5 And so what this suggests is that the
6 nonimmunogenic/immunogenic tumor D-5 does, in fact,
7 sensitize T cells to tumor rejection antigens, and
8 that to see those therapeutic T cells, you have to
9 polarize the T cells to a Type 1 response, and then
10 that will uncover that therapeutic efficacy.

11 So what I suggest is that maybe we've
12 heard a lot about the two signal model, and I think
13 that this is starting to think that there's more
14 than just two signals to this hypothesis, and so
15 while there's certainly antigenic and co-stimulatory
16 signals, there may also be polarizing signals that
17 will direct cells to be one way or another that are
18 probably important in vaccine strategies.

19 And so the question came up, of course,
20 and you've shown this in D-5: is it only the D-5
21 tumor model where a correlation exists between this
22 ability where a Type 1 immune response is
23 therapeutic and a Type 2 response is nontherapeutic?

24 So we've done a number of different
25 tumor models. These first three, the MCA-300 series

S A G CORP.

1 are tumors that were developed in my lab by John
2 Osterholtzer initially and Eric Huntzicker
3 characterized them, and the three that I've looked
4 at here are of various immunogenicities. In fact,
5 the MC-304 is very strongly immunogenic. About 90
6 percent of the animals would be protected by a
7 single vaccination.

8 While 310 falls more into the weakly
9 immunogenic tumor in that immunization only protects
10 about 25 percent of the animals. There's another
11 series of tumors we'll come back to in a minute.

12 But when you look at the tumor vaccine
13 draining lymph nodes from the MCA-300 tumor series,
14 so if you vaccinate the animals, remove the lymph
15 nodes eight to ten days later, separate them into L-
16 selectin low populations, and then stimulate them
17 with anti-CD-3 for two days, expand them on IL-2,
18 and then you look at day five for the tumor specific
19 stimulation to see what cytokine profile they make,
20 what you see is an interesting correlation between
21 immunogenicity and the level of Type 1 cytokines
22 that they make.

23 And the open bars are looking at
24 interferon gamma, and in the solid bars we're
25 looking at IL-4. This is on a log scale.

S A G CORP.

1 So the MC-304 tumor, which is strongly
2 immunogenic, has a dominant interferon gamma
3 response with very low levels of IL-4, while the
4 more weakly immunogenic MCA-310 has a strong IL-4
5 response and a lower interferon gamma response.

6 So we're looking for a way to somehow
7 look at lots of data and combine it, and this is the
8 mean of three separate independent experiments, and
9 so we're looking for ways to try to look at
10 correlations between whether you had an interferon
11 gamma response or an IL-4 response and how that
12 might work in situ.

13 So what we did was look at a
14 relationship of a ratio. So if you take on a
15 picogram per picogram basis and take interferon
16 gamma and compare it to IL-4, you can develop a
17 ratio that looks something like this.

18 And so we've got an interferon gamma/IL-
19 4 ratio here, which is again on a log scale, for six
20 different tumors, and I've got their levels of
21 immunogenicity here on the bottom.

22 This is three separate experiments in
23 each area. The black bar is the mean of those three
24 experiments, and so if you look at the more strongly
25 immunogenic tumors where 90 percent of the animals

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 are protected from a tumor challenge, you can see
2 that they've got a very high level of interferon
3 gamma to IL-4, and the ratio is somewhere near 100.

4 And as you look at tumors that are more
5 weakly or poorly immunogenic where you don't see
6 protection, you see that their IL-4 to interferon
7 gamma ratio, there's more IL-4 than interferon
8 gamma, and in fact, this is probably muted because
9 you're limited by the lower level detection of your
10 interferon gamma.

11 And so, in fact, we're limiting here, I
12 think, at 20 picograms per mL, which is our lowest
13 level of detection, and so if you've got 40 or 80 or
14 80 or 100 picograms of IL-4 and you divide it by 20,
15 it could really only be one. So they actually may
16 be much, much, much lower.

17 So in summary, from those studies we've
18 now concluded that development of a tumor specific
19 Type 1 cytokine response correlates with the
20 development of protective anti-tumor response to a P
21 value of .01 at least for these tumor models, and
22 I'd like to say that even though you develop this
23 Type 1 response, those animals, if they were given
24 the vaccine, which is a live, progressively growing
25 vaccine, they will not reject that vaccine. It's

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 only in a vaccine challenged system that you'll
2 uncover the beneficial effect of developing this
3 Type 1 response.

4 So our conclusion, at least again in
5 these six and actually now ten different tumor
6 models that we've looked at, that the failure of
7 tumor vaccination is due to the nature of the
8 elicited immune response and not to its absence.

9 So we thought about this a bit and
10 developed this central hypothesis that the
11 development of a tumor specific Type 1 cytokine
12 response is critical to the generation of
13 therapeutic T cells.

14 And we thought about some other
15 observations, and the observations were vaccine
16 strategies in naive mice are generally effective.
17 However, clinical vaccine trials generally fail, and
18 we knew that D-5 induces a tumor specific Type 2
19 response, and thinking about the literature and
20 thinking of immune deviation and functional
21 silencing going towards energy, wondering whether or
22 not does D-5 tumor induce tolerance in the tumor
23 bearing mice and will systemic tumor burden affect a
24 generation of therapeutic T cells from TBDLNR mice

S A G CORP.

1 and in the patients that we treated in the vaccine
2 trials?

3 And what we did is we vaccinated either
4 naive or tumor bearing mice with our aloe modified
5 D-5K-D vaccine and adoptively transferred those
6 activated T cells to other mice that bore tumors.

7 These are four different experiments.
8 If you just look at the first experiment, what you
9 see is that the D-5K-D sensitizes T cells in naive
10 animals to mediate a therapeutic antitumor effect,
11 but in the animals that were given systemic tumor
12 five to seven days prior to vaccination, they lost
13 all the antitumor efficacy in all four of the
14 experiments I present here.

15 So we were unable to generate
16 therapeutic effector T cells from the tumor vaccine
17 draining lymph nodes of the tumor bearing mice using
18 the D-5K-D vaccine, and we had the question: how
19 can we overcome this tolerance?

20 And thinking about the work that was
21 done with the GM-CSF vaccines, which Drew reviewed
22 yesterday, we thought we'd try the GM-CSF transduced
23 D-5 tumor, D-5G6, which was developed in Fred
24 Chang's lab at the University of Michigan.

S A G CORP.

1 And what we found there is D-5G6, when
2 you vaccinate naive mice with that vaccine, you get
3 very highly therapeutic cells which essentially cure
4 100 percent of the mice, and these mice go on to be
5 immune and protected from a subsequent tumor
6 challenge.

7 But if you do this vaccine in a tumor
8 bearing model, you get a very similar effect. It
9 may not be quite as strong because we have some
10 animals that go on and will die of their tumor, and
11 in this case we're looking at pulmonary mets. So it
12 didn't clear them all out, but generally they're
13 very highly effective.

14 And just to show you that, and I put
15 this slide in because the discussion this morning
16 when Jeff Sosman raised the question about tumor
17 vaccines and what do they sensitize T cells against,
18 and in collaboration with Elizabeth Tsung initially
19 and Tim Fong and Marty Gidwin and others, and Dale
20 Endoe initially at Chiron Viagene or Viagene and
21 Chiron, we looked at 20 different GP-100 peptides,
22 TRP-2 and some others.

23 And what we show here is looking at
24 fresh vaccine draining lymph node cells just pulsed
25 with peptides and put into ELISPOT assays, and the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 other peptides are essentially absolutely negative,
2 but what you can find is ratios or spot forming
3 cells, frequencies of interferon gamma secreting
4 cells to at least these five different GP-100
5 peptides that range somewhere between one in 6,000
6 and one in 8,000.

7 And then if you take those cells, expand
8 them with anti-CD-3 and IL-2 and come back and pulse
9 them with peptides, you can see specific cytokine
10 response to those peptides.

11 You can also expand those cells up and
12 adoptively transfer them, and they mediate antitumor
13 effects.

14 If you then look at though, getting back
15 to the tumor bearing mice, so I told you that we
16 took D-5K-D vaccine, and we tried to take those and
17 we put that into a mouse that has a systemic tumor
18 burden, and we were unable to generate therapeutic
19 cells from there.

20 So what was the phenotype of those
21 effector cells that we were transferring into the
22 mice? And when you look at their cytokine profiles,
23 and I'm comparing here the naive mice in the open
24 bars and the tumor bearing mice or the effector
25 cells from the tumor bearing mice in the red bars,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 you can see that they've got a decrease in tumor
2 specific interferon gamma, but they still have some
3 tumor specific interferon gamma, but these cells are
4 completely ineffective.

5 If you look in the D-5G6 vaccine in the
6 tumor bearing mice, you can also see they've got a
7 big reduction in tumor specific interferon gamma,
8 but yet' they're still highly therapeutic and will
9 cure animals and provide long-term immunity.

10 So there are so many questions there.
11 It's not what we thought it was going to initially
12 be with immune deviation where you'd polarize the
13 Type 2 response because essentially the IL-4 data,
14 which I didn't show you, is negative, but there's
15 some other mechanism, and maybe it's functional
16 silencing going towards energy that's happening, and
17 that's a current effort in my laboratory that we're
18 working on.

19 So a summary from those studies is that
20 the GM-CSF modified tumor vaccine can break this
21 what we're thinking of as tolerance in loose terms
22 in the tumor bearing mice, and that these
23 therapeutic T cells have reduced tumor specific Type
24 1 cytokines.

S A G CORP.

1 So we also have ongoing a series of
2 clinical trials based on our animal work, which are
3 being done in collaboration with Walter Urba, my
4 clinical colleague, and John Smith and several
5 surgeons back in Portland, where patients are
6 vaccinated with their autologous tumor that's either
7 been also modified to express HLA-B7 or mixed with
8 BCG, and the tumor vaccine draining lymph nodes are
9 removed seven to ten days later. They're activated,
10 expanded, and given back.

11 We've had extra cells on a number of
12 those patients, and so we've separated them into L-
13 selectin low and L-selectin high populations,
14 expanded them with CD-3 and IL-2 to see what their
15 cytokine profile was and whether or not we could
16 actually enrich for the tumor specific T cells in
17 these patients.

18 And what I'd like to say first is if we
19 take the total population that we're able to
20 generate tumor specific cells, tumor specific cells
21 in fact that in the case of both renal and melanoma,
22 that will recognize certain other also melanomas,
23 but not a whole panel of other melanomas that are
24 also, and we're currently in the process of looking

S A G CORP.

1 at whether or not in the melanoma case which GP-100
2 peptides they recognize.

3 But what we've seen is when we look at
4 the bulk population that we activate with anti-CD-3
5 and IL-2 and these are the cells we give back to the
6 patients, we see a mix of both Type 1 and Type 2
7 cytokine responses that appear to be specific in
8 many cases for the patient's autologous tumor, and
9 that when we look at the L-selectin low population,
10 they seem to be enriched more for Type 1 rather than
11 Type 2 cytokine profiles.

12 And interestingly enough, we thought
13 that the L-selectin high population, which should be
14 naive cells, would actually have a lower frequency
15 like we saw in the mouse of tumor specific cells,
16 but, in fact, we find that they've got an enriched
17 population at least in one of the patients that we
18 studied so far, and I would say that these are so
19 preliminary studies that we've only looked at four
20 patients, but we've seen that at least in this one
21 case, we saw an enriched Type 2 response in the L-
22 selectin high population.

23 Then we went back to the literature and
24 found a report from a Japanese group that said that,
25 in fact, that was what they had found as well.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 But more importantly, because we believe
2 that in our mouse model and we want to translate the
3 mouse model to the patients, we looked at whether or
4 not we could take the TBDLN that we have, that we
5 knew were giving us mixed Type 1 and Type 2
6 responses, and whether or not we could polarize them
7 with an IL-4 antagonist and expand them in IL-2 and
8 develop a Type 2 response.

9 And these were studies that were done in
10 collaboration with Raj Puri, who provided the IL-4
11 mutant protein.

12 And what we've shown is that the mutant
13 IL-4 can inhibit the development of T cells with
14 tumor specific IL-10 secretion, which we're taking
15 as a Type 2 cytokine profile, and what we're looking
16 at here is we're looking at tumor specific looking
17 at IL-10 or TNF beta secretion, TNF beta being
18 another Type 1 cytokine, and we're looking at T
19 cells cultured alone without any other mutant IL-4
20 or with an escalating dose of mutant IL-4 added
21 during the culture period of 210 or 100 picograms
22 per mL.

23 I can't see the colors very well, but I
24 think the black bars are the T cells alone. The red

S A G CORP.

1 are the bars of the T cells cultured with autologous
2 tumor or an unrelated renal cell 79 tumor.

3 And what you see is you see IL-10
4 secretion that goes down with increasing, escalated
5 dose of mutant IL-4 protein, while you maintain your
6 Type 1 or TNF beta secretion with those same cells.

7 And so our hope is that this would be a
8 source of Type 1 cells that we could use in adoptive
9 transfer studies.

10 So tumor progression in a Compton host
11 may be explained by a number of mechanisms, and I'm
12 not trying to say that immune deviation is the
13 answer, but certainly T cell ignorance has been well
14 documented, and energy is also a possibility for why
15 tumors progress.

16 Immunosuppression with different
17 molecules deletion, but I just want to say that
18 immune deviation is another alternative, and I'll
19 stop here, in my concluding.

20 There's a lot of people in my lab many
21 of whom have moved on, but John Osterholzer and Eric
22 Huntzicker helped develop the 300 tumors. Hong-Ming
23 Hu has done the majority of experiments that we've
24 presented. Hauke Winter, who's a surgical resident,

S A G CORP.

1 and Joffer Bashi and David Lashley who are also
2 urology residents in the lab did the prostate stuff.

3 My clinical colleague, Walter Urba, who
4 allows all of this to happen and helps us translate
5 it into the clinic.

6 John Smith, Bill Wood, Bruce Lowe, John
7 Bettel, surgeons that have worked with us. Andy
8 Weinberg, Pete Boyd Cantab who have helped supply
9 things. Raj, people at Viagene who have helped us
10 with the GP-100 peptide stuff, and people at VICAL,
11 Mick Croft and Carl Ware and Bob Mitler with some 4-
12 BB stuff I didn't get a chance to present.

13 Thank you for your kind attention.

14 (Applause.)

15 DR. SZNOL: Would all the members of the
16 discussion panel please come up, and, Pat, I believe
17 you're chairing this session.

18 DR. KEEGAN: All right. Well, the
19 issues to be addressed during this panel session
20 would be some considerations about these
21 immunological assessments that might help us guide
22 in the clinical development of these agents.

23 And some of the concerns that we have in
24 terms of the immunologic assays are, first, that
25 they would be relevant to the effective mechanisms

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 for tumor vaccines; that they can be standardized
2 and reproducible assays, which are important both
3 for the initial development, but even more
4 importantly for advanced development in Phase III
5 trials where considerations of reproducibility
6 across centers or whether or not there needs to be a
7 centralized laboratory in place.

8 That there be some evidence of
9 discriminatory ability, which again is important in
10 the initial studies for dose and schedule
11 optimization, but also for considerations of post
12 marketing bridging type studies when there might be
13 modifications of the product, that one might be able
14 to use some of these assays for such bridging
15 studies as one does in prophylactic vaccines for
16 infectious diseases, as well as some issues
17 regarding characterization of patients' immune
18 states in a Basil prevaccination and how those
19 issues might impact upon assessment of the
20 immunological assays.

21 So I guess the first question really
22 addresses the one about the relevance to the
23 effector mechanisms and how does one go about
24 determining which assay to utilize, what kinds of in
25 vitro and preclinical animal models are useful in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 choosing the appropriate assay to assess immune
2 responses in the clinical trials, and what kinds of
3 things would one want to control for, assess in the
4 patient population to determine whether or not these
5 have impact on the immune responses.

6 And we could probably just start if
7 anybody wants to start with the initial question or
8 we could go down the panel, and now from Jay's side.

9 DR. ROSENBERG: You know, with respect
10 to the assays used, I think we heard a lot about the
11 many different assays today, but we need to remember
12 that virtually all the assays that we discussed were
13 measurements on peripheral blood, and peripheral
14 blood may be exactly the wrong place to be looking.

15 We can measure with the peptide vaccines
16 very high precursor frequency levels in the one to
17 two to 3,000 range in many patients. Again, that's
18 what you would get after infection with flu, and yet
19 in the face of those high precursor levels, patients
20 do not show responses.

21 And, again, so long as the cell is in
22 the circulation, it's not likely to be able to
23 impact on a tumor. It has to become extravascular
24 and get into the tumor stroma. So we need to be

1 emphasizing somewhat more looking in the tumor
2 stroma.

3 Further, when we give Interleukin-2
4 along with these peptide vaccines, even now, even
5 though 40 percent or 42 percent of the 31 patients
6 in our trial responded, the measurement of
7 precursors in peripheral blood did not increase. It
8 decreased significantly, and we don't have a good
9 explanation for that, but perhaps it's because those
10 cells left the circulation, indirect tumor sites or
11 go to tumor, and in the face of IL-2 or apoptosed,
12 we don't fully understand that.

13 With respect to the relative sensitivity
14 of the assays, we have in those peptide vaccine
15 trials directly thus far compared the bulk cytokine
16 release assays, ELISPOT assays, limiting dilution
17 assays, and now with Drs. Lee and Mirankle the
18 tetramer assay, and nothing in our hands has been
19 more sensitive than just a bulk assay of peripheral
20 blood mononuclear cells that are exposed to a
21 specific peptide.

22 The tetramer assays, which are elegant,
23 are, of course, limited by the sensitivity of FACS,
24 and so one can't reproducibly see precursor
25 frequencies that are going to be less than one in

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 1,000 just because of limitations of the background
2 noise in most FACS assays.

3 DR. KEEGAN: Dr. Berzofsky, would you
4 like to comment?

5 DR. BERZOFSKY: I think I agree with the
6 comments that Steve made about looking in the
7 peripheral blood unfortunately may not be the
8 optimal site to look even though that's what we have
9 access to.

10 We haven't done the comparison that he
11 just described between these different assays.
12 We're trying to set some of them up, but in
13 infectious disease models, we've certainly been able
14 to see a correlation between CCL lytic activity and
15 virus clearance, as well as between interferon gamma
16 production and virus clearance.

17 And I don't know how much that will
18 correlate, of course, with tumor clearance, but
19 certainly in those animal models you can actually
20 show cause and effect in some systems.

21 I think it remains to be seen exactly
22 which are the right cells we should be looking for,
23 and we've heard today examples of cytotoxic T cells,
24 as well as examples where TH-1 responses compared to
25 TH-2 responses were very important, and ultimately I

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 think all of these, as well as potentially
2 antibodies, may play a role.

3 So I'm not sure we can limit ourselves
4 to any single assay at this point because each of
5 those will give us a different window on the
6 response, and until we have real clinical
7 correlates, it's hard to know which of the responses
8 will best correlate with clinical responses.

9 DR. SCHLOM: I'd like to ask the people
10 working in the clinical melanoma setting have they
11 looked at different time points at precursors, one
12 week after immunization, two weeks. Most people are
13 taking their samples, I think, three or four weeks
14 after immunization. Has anybody looked at temporal
15 factors?

16 DR. FOX: Actually we have. We have,
17 too. I think Fred Chang has got data on that as
18 well, and that is that when you vaccinate and look
19 at one week after vaccination, and we have the
20 draining lymph nodes to go in parallel with that,
21 you can find high numbers of tumor specific cells in
22 the draining lymph nodes while the peripheral blood
23 are uniformly negative for the same cells.

24 So activated with CD-3 and expanded in
25 IL-2, they have no antitumor activity, whereas you

S A G CORP.

1 can find in some cases a high frequency of tumor
2 specific T cells in the draining lymph nodes.

3 PARTICIPANT: Maybe I can comment on
4 this because we've done serial kinetic studies of
5 peptide specific CD-8 responses following multiple
6 immunizations, and measuring CD-8 responses
7 following two, four, and seven immunizations, what
8 we found is that the peak of the response was after
9 the fourth immunization, and after that the response
10 fell off.

11 What isn't clear is whether the response
12 fell off at that point because the immunization
13 schedule became longer, that is, it was a longer
14 time, you know, between immunization.

15 But clearly the kinetics of the response
16 are very important, and the time you pick to measure
17 your assay is going to impact on the results that
18 you get.

19 But, you know, I'd like to make one
20 comment if I can, which is that I'm not sure that at
21 the present time we really know, you know, what the
22 most important parameter of the immune response is
23 that we ought to measure to look at protective
24 effect.

1 I mean, clearly CD-8 responses are very
2 important. There's considerable evidence that
3 antibody responses are important. There's evidence
4 presented by Dr. Morton, and we've had, you know,
5 similar data that the combination of responses
6 correlates best with improved clinical outcome.

7 Other cell types would be important, CD-
8 4 cells. NK cells may be important, particularly in
9 advanced tumors when the tumor may lose HLA molecule
10 and, therefore, will no longer be susceptible to be
11 killed by CD-8 cells.

12 So one point which I would like to
13 stress is that at least in the scientific evaluation
14 of vaccines, not necessarily in the regulatory
15 aspect, that one measures multiple parameters of the
16 immune response until we have a better sense as to
17 what is really important, and most likely what will
18 turn out to be important is that all of them will be
19 important to different degree and in different
20 stages of tumor evolution.

21 PARTICIPANT: Could I just extend that
22 comment? I also feel badly that antibody has gotten
23 such short shrift.

24 (Laughter.)

1 PARTICIPANT: When you have minimal
2 residual disease where antibody has access to the
3 tumor cells, we already have several instances
4 clinically where they have been very effective.

5 But the problem is that people expect
6 them to be effective because of their conventional
7 effector mechanism, bringing in ADCC, fixing
8 complement, et cetera, but in fact, antibodies
9 properly used which multimorize (phonetic) the
10 receptors are very powerful as agonists in inducing
11 apoptosis and cell cycle arrest.

12 That's how they should first be
13 screened. Then you could put on the right cassette
14 to get a maximum effector function, and I think in
15 that setting, where you have access to cells, where
16 they have powerful signaling effects and effector
17 effects, they will synergize with T cells, and
18 that's what we've observed in a mouse model where we
19 can induce dormancy by a very strong anti-id
20 signaling antibody, but T cells synergize with the
21 antibody.

22 DR. KEEGAN: Okay, yes.

23 DR. WEBER: One piece of mouse work
24 that's recent suggests that during and just after
25 the peak of a viral infection in a mouse, the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 convalescent levels of CD-8 positive T cells are
2 extremely high. It's not one in 5,000, not one in
3 1,000. We're talking ten, 15 percent of all the CD-
4 8 T cells may be viral specific.

5 And it could be that one in 5,000 or one
6 in 2,000 is simply not a threshold level of CTL that
7 are antigen specific in melanoma to induce either
8 protection or aggression. It could be that you
9 literally have to get up to one in ten to be able to
10 see a positive clinical effect.

11 I'm not saying that's the case. I'm
12 just throwing that out as a thought, that we may be
13 way off in the potency of our immunizations. If we
14 can generate one in 1,000, for example, it may just
15 be off by a factor of ten or more.

16 DR. KEEGAN: Dr. Lee, could I ask you to
17 comment on the tetramer assays and whether or not --
18 most of the assays that we've heard about are
19 directed at some functional assessment, and I think
20 the tetramers are in contrast to that.

21 Do you think that the tetramer assay
22 should always be evaluated in conjunction with some
23 functional assay or in conjunction with assessment
24 of CD-45 molecules?

1 DR. LEE: Yeah, I think one of the
2 things that I really like about the tetramer
3 approach is that you can isolate these cells with a
4 minimal amount of perturbations to the cells. You
5 don't have to stimulate them in vitro. You don't
6 have to culture them with cytokines.

7 And so it's about as close to the native
8 state as you can get, and so I think because of that
9 it's a fairly powerful method of studying the native
10 biological properties of these cells, such as
11 surface markers, et cetera.

12 DR. KEEGAN: I guess what I'm working
13 toward is how would one go about looking at how it
14 is that whatever it is you're measuring relates
15 potentially to the desired effect in terms of tumor
16 reduction, and it sounds like most people are
17 suggesting that we don't know so that we need to use
18 multiple assays.

19 But to what extent, because that may be
20 somewhat impractical to do in clinical trials, to
21 study everything simultaneously -- how useful are
22 the animal models in terms of selecting or
23 minimizing the number of assays being utilized?

24 DR. KHLIEF: Actually, if I may add on
25 this question, when you did the tetramer assay for

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Jeff's trial, did it correlate at all or what was
2 the correlation with the immunological assays that
3 they conducted, like cytotoxic assays or cytokine
4 releasing?

5 DR. LEE: Yeah, we haven't really gotten
6 together to really sort all the data out yet, but
7 right now it looks confusing.

8 (Laughter.)

9 DR. WEBER: Samir, the one patient that
10 Peter had the best response in did have immunologic
11 response, but I would call it a modest immunologic
12 response. There was obviously more cytokine release
13 post and pre, but it was not as impressive as the
14 relative numbers, the ratios of cells, the CD-8
15 cells that were positive post/pre in the tetramer
16 assay.

17 I mean, you know, you need to get enough
18 numbers. You need to get 20, 30, 40 patients to
19 make some comparisons, and that's what we're going
20 to try to do.

21 DR. KHLIEF: You know, I think I would
22 add just one point that I'd probably stress at this
23 stage on immunological monitoring mainly, and this
24 is not a statement. Probably it's old for
25 discussion. Somebody yesterday said just do

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 whatever you believe in at this stage from an
2 immunologic monitoring point of view until you reach
3 to a point where you have an antigen that lead to a
4 good clinical response that you can correlate with
5 what you have immunologically and say this
6 correlates and this doesn't correlate. That might
7 be the approach at this stage.

8 DR. KEEGAN: So are you saying that it's
9 not until the Phase III trial is completed that one
10 can go back and try and elucidate what's an
11 appropriate immunologic response which might
12 subsequently correlate?

13 Dr. Simon, I can see you.

14 DR. SIMON: If you had the data to know
15 what was the best immunologic assay, you really
16 probably wouldn't need the immunologic assay at all
17 because you would be having enough clinical
18 responses to be using clinical response as your
19 endpoint.

20 So I think by necessity since you're
21 dealing at a level of study in which you're not
22 getting a lot of responses, you basically are having
23 to use your best science and are essentially fishing
24 around based on your best, you know, animal models
25 or whatever to use the assays you think are the most

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 relevant, but you may be wrong and they cannot be
2 validated.

3 DR. KHLIEF: Actually this is why I said
4 it's not a statement. It's a discussion, but you
5 know, I might disagree on this because if you have
6 an indication from one antigen, for example, that
7 this particular assay could correlate, that assay
8 might be used to know whether that particular
9 antigen has potential in the future. If it was a
10 weak, then you would grow an enhanced on that
11 antigen to reach to the clinical responses if that's
12 the case.

13 PARTICIPANT: Or better explain
14 nonresponders.

15 DR. KHLIEF: Or better explain
16 nonresponders, absolutely.

17 DR. KEEGAN: Because we're going to be
18 moving from Phase I into larger trials, it's clear
19 that one needs to be using assays that are going to
20 be reproducible at different centers. To what
21 extent do the assays that are currently in use --
22 are they the types of assays that could be performed
23 reproducibly at different centers in such a way that
24 one could utilize the data or pool the data?

1 DR. DISIS: Some of the assays are very
2 easy to do and quite reproducible, and some of the
3 assays are very difficult to do and require special
4 techniques, and that's why I think that there are
5 several cooperative groups around the United States
6 that are looking to run Phase II studies of
7 promising vaccines that have been tested in Phase I
8 studies, actually sending samples to centers that
9 have the expertise and some of these more
10 technically difficult assays.

11 Because I think it's the feeling of most
12 people that there are several good strategies out
13 there right now. There are several good antigens
14 that would allow monitoring of an immune response,
15 and that what really needs to be done at this point
16 with some of the very quantitative assays that
17 require very little or none in vitro manipulation,
18 that we really need to show that the immune response
19 correlates to a clinical response, and that can only
20 be done in terms of Phase II study.

21 DR. KEEGAN: Dr. Berzofsky.

22 DR. BERZOFSKY: I'd like to mention one
23 result that adds support to the use of cytokine
24 measurements as a key response that Bernie Fox
25 mentioned and that Steve mentioned as well, and that

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 is an epidemiologic cross-sectional study that was
2 done by Tagret Sekui in our lab in collaboration
3 with Alan Hildesheim and Mark Schiffman's group,
4 looking at women with different stages of cervical
5 neoplasia related to papilloma virus.

6 And we looked at the IL-2 response to
7 human papilloma virus antigens, and there was an
8 inverse correlation between that and the degree of
9 cervical neoplasia, and it was antigen specific.

10 So that's a human epidemiologic study
11 that suggests a correlation between a TH-1 type
12 response and lack of progression, although it's done
13 in a cross-sectional, not a longitudinal study. So
14 you can't prove cause and effect, but it certainly
15 supports that kind of interpretation and fits nicely
16 with the data that Bernie presented earlier this
17 afternoon.

18 DR. KEEGAN: Dr. Siegel.

19 DR. SIEGEL: It struck me in listening
20 to the panel that if this were five or ten years
21 ago, we would have heard perhaps a lot more about
22 CTL assays using chromium release in tumor killing.
23 Jay, I think you had some data on that, right, with
24 lytic units, but not a lot, and I wonder. Is there
25 a consensus? We're hearing a lot more about the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cytokine assays, some about proliferation, two cell
2 enumeration, flow cytometric assays. Does that
3 reflect the difficulties of doing the CTL assays in
4 a reproducible cross-sectional way or a feeling that
5 maybe they're not giving the more important answers
6 in terms of optimizing vaccine strategies?

7 DR. ROSENBERG: You know, I don't think
8 it really makes sense to be thinking in terms of
9 what immunologic assays we should be using to
10 monitor vaccine trials because unless you are
11 performing a manipulation that causes a significant
12 number of clinical responses, you cannot correlate
13 what in vitro assays are correlating with clinical
14 responses.

15 And so we perform the immunologic assays
16 to try to understand the immunologic impact of what
17 we're doing, but to talk about using them as a
18 monitoring tool really makes no sense because we
19 can't perform the correlations unless clinical
20 responses are seen.

21 In these two days we've heard very
22 little in the way of clinical responses to virtually
23 any of the vaccine manipulations that have been
24 performed in humans.

1 So I don't know how we can talk about
2 what is the most relevant assay. We can only talk
3 about how can we study the impact of the
4 manipulation.

5 DR. FOX: Just an additional comment on
6 Jay's question. I think though, too, that in our
7 cases, the T cells that we're adoptively
8 transferring back are not cytolytic, and so we've
9 stopped doing it because we don't see much cytolytic
10 activity.

11 At the same time, we see strong cytokine
12 releasing responses from those T cells. We also
13 have data in the mouse that shows that in this Type
14 1/Type 2 paradigm, you can do these experiments in
15 perform knockout animals and see perfectly good
16 tumor regression and development of immunity.

17 So we think of it as being certainly a
18 cytokine based mechanism in the absence of perform
19 that can cause complete tumor regression and
20 immunity. So we've kind of gotten away from that,
21 too.

22 DR. WEBER: I have two quick comments.
23 One is certainly to agree with Steve that you have
24 to be, as we discussed yesterday, you have to be
25 able to correlate what you're studying

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 immunologically with some clinical beneficial
2 effect. It could be clinical response. It could be
3 time to relapse. It could be overall survival. Any
4 of those, I think, are reasonable surrogates for
5 clinical benefit.

6 The other is if I had to choose an
7 immunologic monitoring test, I would think about
8 something that would have some sort of internal
9 control, and flow cytometry using the tetramers,
10 just as an example, or just flow cytometry in
11 general, to agree with what Gerry Marti said and
12 what Carleton Stewart said, would seem to me to be
13 the most reproducible and promising type of assay.

14 I don't mean tetramers specifically, but
15 a flow cytometrically related assay since there is
16 significant uniformity available among the machines.
17 You can have internal controls and set them.

18 I would look to some flow cytometry
19 assay in the future, but, again, it doesn't matter
20 what kind of assay you have. If it doesn't
21 correlate with a clinical beneficial effect, who
22 cares?

23 DR. SIEGEL: Well, still, I think the
24 point needs to be repeated. I think we're all in
25 agreement there are, as was well pointed out, there

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 aren't clinical data. No one's going to correlate
2 an immune response with clinical data, and it's
3 easy; it's possible to say, and it's correct to say
4 that one should measure all of those immune
5 responses so that when you get clinical or as many
6 as you can reliably, so that when you get clinical
7 data you can correlate it.

8 But, in fact, those trials to get
9 clinical data are going to take years and millions
10 of dollars. There's only going to be a limited
11 number of regimens that go forward. We saw the
12 panoply of choices that need to be made.

13 What is the dose? What is the regimen?
14 What are the adjuvants? How are we going to do
15 that?

16 And I think virtually everyone we heard
17 from is using some immunological marker, some
18 immunological marker to optimize or select among
19 those regimens, and ultimately how well we guess
20 what's the right one is a very critical question as
21 to whether those agents that go forward into
22 clinical trials have a good likelihood of success.

23 DR. KEEGAN: We can take a few questions
24 from the audience, I think.

1 DR. MARTI: I have a question for Dr.
2 Lee. First a comment.

3 A historical thing on the CD-34
4 determinations, which on a good day might be as high
5 as some of your antigen specific T cells. The
6 interlaboratory variation at least in North America
7 has been recorded as high as plus or minus 1,000
8 percent.

9 I won't ask what your positive control
10 is for enumerating that low a percentage, but I had
11 another question that I wanted to ask you.

12 Oh, does each patient have to have his
13 own HLA type Class II antigen made or is it generic?

14 DR. LEE: Class II?

15 DR. MARTI: Well, when you make this
16 tetramer, like if you're going to immunize me, do
17 you have to know my HLA type, and if we're going to
18 immunize you, do we have to know your HLA type?

19 DR. LEE: Yeah, exactly. So you have to
20 know both the HLA type and the peptide to make the
21 tetramer.

22 DR. MARTI: So this is like a customized
23 hybrid owner.

24 DR. LEE: That's right, and so for
25 practical purposes we've stuck to HLA-2.1.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MARTI: Okay. So you choose one
2 that you can screen and study a lot of people.

3 DR. LEE: Yeah, but your point is well
4 taken. For FACS analysis, the problem is that your
5 numbers will change depending on the gaites that you
6 set, and so it's a subjective thing. Unless you get
7 a very, very clearly positive and very clearly
8 negative population, it's always going to be this
9 kind of border that will affect your numbers
10 depending on how you set the boundaries.

11 DR. MARTI: But it can probably be
12 standardized and controlled. I would approach it
13 that it could be because it certainly has been going
14 in that direction for CD-34.

15 I was hoping that you'd recommend that
16 all of the investigators in this room all need to
17 have a nine color flow cytometer.

18 (Laughter.)

19 DR. WEBER: I mean, because the peptide
20 and the MHC are going to match up, and with five
21 haplotypes you can cover the whole population. So I
22 don't think it's a valid comparison, although you
23 will have to match the peptide with the particular
24 ileal, and you'll have to haplotype the patient, but
25 that's not that difficult. That's standard stuff.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MARTI: So those reagents will
2 become available within a month.

3 DR. WEBER: Actually some of them are
4 already commercially available, by the way.

5 DR. RESTIFO: You know, for all of the
6 kind of feeling that we don't know what to measure,
7 I'm a little more optimistic than that. I think
8 that, I mean, we do know a little more than that.
9 We know antigens that are expressed on the surface
10 of tumor cells that are restricted by MHC Class I
11 molecules. We know their identities.

12 Now, not every antigen is going to be
13 expressed in the surface of these, but we know some.
14 We know that cytotoxic T cells are found in tumor
15 beds, that they can recognize human tumors ex vivo.
16 We know in animal models that pure populations of
17 CD-8 positive T lymphocytes can be transferred and
18 can recognize tumor cells. That's why we measure
19 CD-8 positive T cells.

20 That doesn't mean it's all CD-8 positive
21 T cells. We also know that COGME CD-4 help in some
22 models, can alter or can help CD-8 positive T cells
23 by secreting IL-2 and other co-factors. We know
24 that CD-4 positive T cells can alter antigen

1 presenting cell function, can super activate
2 dendritic cells and other antigen presenting cells.

3 And so I don't think we need to be so
4 bleak about our state of knowledge. I think it's a
5 heck of a lot better than it was ten years ago or
6 even five years or three years ago, with all of the
7 molecular characterization that's gone on.

8 So I think that moving towards a state
9 of reductionistic analysis of what's going on on the
10 molecular level is what's going to get us places.

11 DR. KEEGAN: Dr. Simon, would you want
12 to give a final word, a little bit about any
13 strategies for looking among different monitoring --
14 among the different assays and using or selecting
15 those from the results of trials, since it seems to
16 be that people are suggesting we're going to be
17 using the clinical responses to drive selection of
18 some of these.

19 DR. SIMON: Well, I agree with much of
20 what has been said about the general overall
21 strategy, including the way Jay put it, that we have
22 to optimize various aspects of the delivery of the
23 vaccines and we don't really know. We have to use
24 our best science, and we have to make some judgments
25 as to what types of immunologic endpoints to use.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I guess the one thing I feel that we
2 really need to make sure we place attention on, in
3 addition to the science of the immunology behind the
4 assays we use, is a lot of attention on the
5 reproducibility of the assays we use because I think
6 if we don't really make sure that whenever we're
7 going to do a clinical trial that we really
8 understand in context of that trial for that peptide
9 or that antigen what the reproducibility of the
10 assays we decide to use are, then I think we're
11 really limiting ourselves because I think then the
12 interpretation of individual trials -- and I don't
13 mean just reproducibility if you take one sample and
14 put it in 24 wells. I'm talking about
15 reproducibility either in multiple blood drawings or
16 if it's a trial that involves multiple laboratories,
17 then it has to include that component of
18 reproducibility.

19 That really, I think, requires
20 professional attention to make sure that whatever
21 assays we use, that the results are interpretable.

22 DR. KEEGAN: Okay. I think we -- okay.
23 One last question, and then we'll go to the break, I
24 guess.

1 PARTICIPANT: Well, maybe I can make two
2 brief comments and two brief questions.

3 (Laughter.)

4 PARTICIPANT: No, the comment is that --
5 the comments are that I think we should be much more
6 positive about the use of immune assays to monitor
7 the effective of vaccine treatment. I mean, these
8 assays are available, and the resulting assay is
9 really what we must use in Phase II trials to
10 optimize the way we administer and make the
11 vaccines.

12 I think that there are ways of
13 correlating the impact of the vaccine to clinical
14 outcome because the clinical outcome points that you
15 have are not only whether or not the tumor goes
16 away, but you can use endpoints like disease free
17 survival, overall survival, and you can make
18 correlations, and these have been done by a number
19 of investigators.

20 One thing that I think you must be
21 conscious when you make these correlations is that
22 association doesn't necessarily mean causation, and
23 there may be different factors that account for why
24 a patient does better or worse.

S A G CORP.

1 I think just like we do when, you know,
2 you evaluate the impact of a drug treatment, its
3 standard approach to do multivariate analysis. You
4 take into account the risk factors that can impact
5 on outcome.

6 The same way when we look at the impact
7 or associate the result of an immune assay, its
8 critical outcome, it's very important that we do Cox
9 multivariate type of analysis to try to control for
10 other factors that could impact on outcome.

11 DR. KEEGAN: Okay. I'd like to thank
12 the panel and say that we're going to take a
13 slightly briefer coffee break, about ten minutes.

14 (Whereupon, the foregoing matter went
15 off the record at 3:40 p.m. and went
16 back on the record at 3:57 p.m.)

17 DR. GREENBLATT: So I would like to get
18 started. So those of you who are in the room, if
19 you could take your seats, we can start.

20 My name is Jay Greenblatt. I'm from the
21 Regulatory Affairs Branch, Cancer Therapy Evaluation
22 Program at the National Cancer Institute, and one of
23 the organizing committee of this meeting and co-
24 moderator of this last, but not leastly important
25 section on detection and characterization of tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 antigens and vaccines, and which also has relevance
2 to other fields, such as bone marrow transplantation
3 of cancer patients.

4 It is with great pleasure that I get to
5 introduce my co-moderator of this last session and
6 someone whose name you are all familiar with, Dr.
7 Jonathan uhr, now retired Professor of Microbiology
8 at University of Texas, Southwestern Medical Center
9 in Dallas, and his presentation is entitled
10 "Detection and Characterization of Carcinoma Cells
11 in the Blood."

12 Dr. Uhr.

13 DR. UHR: Can you all hear me?

14 PARTICIPANTS: Yes.

15 DR. UHR: It's an intimate group. So I
16 won't have to speak quite as loud.

17 (Laughter.)

18 DR. UHR: Of course, I want to thank the
19 organizers. I've learned a lot from this meeting.

20 I'm going to describe to you a very
21 sensitive test for enumerating and characterizing
22 carcinoma cells in the blood. Its pertinence to the
23 theme of this meeting is obvious, but I do want to
24 discuss with you first the idea that made me develop

1 the test, and at the end what I'd like to use it
2 for.

3 Now, the hallmark of successful
4 treatment is earlier detection. Can I have the
5 first slide, please?

6 And basically this is really the
7 hypothesis, that when you have a small number of
8 tumor cells, perhaps ten to fourth to the sixth,
9 they're already shedding. They break down tissue
10 barriers. I don't see how they cannot be shedding
11 into the blood, but I think cells at this point for
12 the most part become apoptotic or dormant.

13 Now, as the tumor grows and, of course,
14 is genetically unstable and more genetic changes
15 take place, you reach a point where you can detect
16 it by sensitive conventional assays. Let's say
17 mammography can detect may be as little as two times
18 ten to the eighth tumor cells, not less.

19 And at this point in time, I still think
20 you have most of the cells or markers for the tumor,
21 but will not metastasize, but in some cases, yes, we
22 know that even a small breast tumor, less than a
23 sonometer in diameter can have metastases, and with
24 angiogenesis have progressive growth.

S A G CORP.

1 Now, there are a large number of tumors
2 relatively inaccessible -- the pancreas would be the
3 example par excellence and others -- which are
4 routinely detected very late and very often have
5 local invasion and growing metastases.

6 So the hypothesis is that tumor cells
7 should be present in the blood by Stage II and
8 probably earlier. Now, you may think this is a
9 bizarre speculation that we'll detect it here, but I
10 will raise it for you because it has implications.

11 If one detects the cells here and one
12 can prove that they're neoplastic cells and you have
13 the organ of origin, not hard to do in the breast
14 and prostate, you might want to vaccinate at that
15 point, and you'll have a very small number of cells
16 that are less genetically screwed up, and they might
17 be more easily handled.

18 Now, the test is -- this is the
19 objective to develop the test, and the test is a two
20 phase test.

21 Is this working?

22 Where we take a small amount of blood,
23 ten or 20 mL. We put on ferrofluid, which is a
24 colloidal iron suspension. These are not particles
25 that you can see. They're submicroscopic, about 150

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 nanometers, and you coat them with the right anti-
2 epithelial adhesion molecule which has high affinity
3 and some other characteristics we can't really
4 detail.

5 You can with appropriate washing and
6 magnetic field get a 10,000-fold purification, and
7 you have to get that for the test to be effective.

8 Then you can use flow cytometry. You
9 can use a dye to not stain the red cells and,
10 therefore, exclude them, anti-CD-45 to exclude the
11 white cells, and then we use an anti-cytokeratin to
12 again pick up the epithelial cells, and one can do
13 others. And, in fact, we're planning to use as many
14 as six or seven because it is possible to do that
15 now.

16 Now, you could also take after this
17 purification, cytospin the cells, and look at their
18 morphology, their immuno-histochemistry, and analyze
19 them genetically. I mean multi-color FISH on
20 interface cells is a very effective way of doing
21 this, and we're collaborating with Thomas Reed here
22 in those studies.

23 The cells that come from here are alive,
24 and they stay alive for a while in culture. We
25 haven't tried to establish a cell line from them,

S A G CORP.

1 but perhaps in the future they could be looked at as
2 a testing ground for potential therapeutic agents,
3 looking for apoptosis, for example, with membrane
4 flipping.

5 Now, the first question to be asked in
6 terms of the test is how efficient is it. Can you
7 recover all the cells? And to answer that you
8 simply mix normal blood with different numbers of
9 adenocarcinoma cells, and they can come from any
10 kind. In fact, the ones I show you come from a
11 colon carcinoma, and perform the immunomagnetic
12 purification followed by FACS.

13 And the answer is that when you put in
14 no cells, you get back none. We've painted the
15 epithelial cells red. You can see this is CD-45 on
16 the abscissa, and cytokeratin on the ordinate.

17 If you put in 200, we get back about 75
18 percent, but some of these dots are superimposed.
19 When you get down to lower numbers, you get them all
20 back.

21 So recovery is at low numbers, which is
22 what we're interested in, is very high, above 95
23 percent.

24 Now, the next question was: can we
25 detect these in the blood? And we want to look at

S A G CORP.

1 normal individuals. We want to look at patients who
2 have early cancers. If we can't detect them in
3 those patients, then we might as well stop the
4 study.

5 So again, we'll do the complete analysis
6 on normals, patients with nonneoplastic diseases,
7 patients with clinically organ confined carcinoma,
8 and patients with metastatic carcinoma.

9 And when we did that, here are
10 representative examples. A is a normal person. He
11 has two epithelial cells. About 40 percent have
12 none. The other 60 percent of, quote, normals can
13 have up to five epithelial cells. We don't know
14 their source. It may come from putting a needle
15 through the skin. It may come from shedding from a
16 mucus membrane, but there are small numbers or none.

17 Now, here is a patient with breast
18 cancer, organ confined. This was taken just before
19 surgery, and there are nine cells, and here's one
20 that has an organ confined prostate cancer. I think
21 there are ten or 11.

22 This is a patient with breast cancer,
23 but it has metastasized already. There's a very
24 large tumor burden. I think I calculated this as
25 many millions of cells in the blood.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Now, to summarize, is there a
2 statistical difference between the control groups
3 and the patients with clinically organ confined
4 carcinoma? We're not interested in diagnosing
5 metastatic cancer. That can be done clinically.

6 And we simply looked at coded samples by
7 FACS. I have to tell you, I mean, FACS I do feel
8 has subjectivity, and that's why I had the samples
9 coded, and in fact, they were done by two different
10 observers. One did the gating individually, and the
11 other used an algorithm.

12 If you use an algorithm, it will be
13 objective.

14 And there was no significant difference
15 between the two, and here are the results.

16 Here are the normals in the white.
17 There's no difference whether they have a benign
18 tumor or not, and they usually go up, as I told you,
19 to five cells. You recall can't see them here
20 because they average, I think, 1.7 cells.

21 The organ confined; there were 26.
22 Seven were prostate. The rest were breast, and in
23 24 of the 26, they had seven or more cells. The
24 average was 16 in each, which is purely
25 coincidental.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 We calculated a cutoff point based on
2 this 6.8 cells, the standard deviation, the average
3 plus three times the standard deviation. So 24 of
4 the 26 we're able to diagnose by count alone.

5 I should say a tentative diagnosis. It
6 was highly significant statistically by several
7 statistical methods, and there's a statistical
8 difference between the organ confined clinically and
9 the metastatic, again arguing that we're looking at
10 tumor load.

11 Now, are these excess epithelial cells
12 carcinoma cells? I mean a dot on the plot is not
13 the same as a carcinoma cell.

14 So for this we did our immunomagnetic
15 purification, which still gives us a lot of white
16 cells on the slide, but not so many that we have to
17 use more than one small area of the slide.

18 Of course, we coded the slides. We
19 stained them with Mucin-1, which tends to stain only
20 malignant cells intensely, and we looked at them or
21 I looked at them for cytomorphology, again, of
22 course, coded.

23 And I'll show you what they looked like,
24 and I'll tell you how well I did in terms of the
25 coding. Here are normal epithelial cells. These

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 were obtained from foreskin. We didn't want
2 cultured cells because these aren't cultured. They
3 have a lot of cytoplasm compared to the nucleus.
4 The ratio of nucleus to cytoplasm is relatively low.
5 It's a rather eukaryotic type of nucleus and so
6 forth, doesn't stain with Mucin-1, and notice that
7 these cancer cells, these two are from organ
8 confined, I believe, breast and carcinoma; have a
9 huge nucleus, just a rim of cytoplasm. Cytoplasm
10 stains heavily with anti-Mucin-1. The nucleus has
11 rather disorganized chromatin clumps and easily
12 distinguished from the normal cells.

13 Here is a macrophage with two tumor
14 cells that I think are consistent with apoptotic
15 tumor cells.

16 Now, when I looked at these slides, I
17 made no false positive calls. There was no
18 interobserver error. I was given some slides two
19 times, but I did miss two prostate carcinomas, which
20 I called normal, and frankly, I think it's a
21 function of my age and patience because the
22 postdoctoral fellow showed me afterwards on at least
23 one of them a clear-cut carcinoma cell, but you
24 know, when you begin to look at two or three dozen
25 slides at my stage, you get a little impatient.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 But the key thing was no false positives
2 and no interobserver error. One can afford a false
3 negative for the reasons I mentioned.

4 Now, the next question was: does the
5 blood test for the epithelial cells parallel the
6 clinical course? Would this be at all useful to
7 monitor therapy if one wanted to?

8 And 12 patients undergoing treatment for
9 breast cancer were followed clinically blood test
10 for one to ten months.

11 Now, one thing I'll tell you. A caveat
12 about this experiment is that it encoded. The
13 clinician knew the blood tests, which I'm not happy
14 with because I like to have these things not done
15 that way.

16 But anyway, in four representative
17 patients, you can see that if you plot the clinical
18 status, which is measured no evident disease and
19 stable disease and progressive disease, life
20 threatening disease, et cetera, versus the number of
21 epithelial cells in the blood, which we now know are
22 carcinoma cells, you can see that there's a general
23 parallelism.

24 High dose chemotherapy and both fall.
25 There's a relapse rather quickly, and again they're

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 given high dose chemotherapy. It falls again. On
2 maintenance chemotherapy, lower doses, it falls, but
3 then it comes back up again, et cetera.

4 Notice this patient that had no evidence
5 of disease basically had relatively small numbers at
6 this point. These others are much larger, as you
7 see, in terms of the ordinate.

8 So I guess you can consider this another
9 argument that we're measuring tumor burden, and it
10 may be useful basically to monitor treatment.

11 Now, what is the difference between this
12 blood test and a lot of other assays for tumor cells
13 in the blood that have been used frequently? And
14 why are we able to detect such a small number?

15 Well, the first thing is the
16 sensitivity. I mean, you can't use large metal
17 beads. You can't have any clumping. You have to
18 get a 10,000-fold purification. The beads we're
19 using do not have to be removed. You can't even see
20 them.

21 So I think that's one of the key things,
22 and I think the flow cytometry has to be done very
23 carefully and properly, and if, for example, you
24 lysed the red blood cells, the noise level is too
25 high.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Well, the fact is that I think that the
2 volume of blood we take is the limiting factor. I
3 think we can detect one carcinoma cell in 10 mL of
4 blood.

5 PCR based methods can possibly go up to
6 one in ten to the seventh, but that's not usually
7 the case, and you certainly can do it by magnetic
8 enrichment with immunocytochemistry. Both of these
9 can look at the cytology, which you can't by PCR,
10 and here you can quantify the number of cells quite
11 precisely. You can't do that. It's really positive
12 or negative with PCR. You can't do it with
13 immunocytochemistry.

14 Now, with both of these you can look at
15 both proteins and nucleic acids. Of course, you can
16 keep on going back to the same cell and look at
17 different markers in each of these methods. You can
18 look at markers for proliferative status,
19 invasiveness, aggressiveness, et cetera. I've
20 presented none of that data to you.

21 You can compare the primary tumor to the
22 cells in the blood to be able to say that the blood
23 cells come from the tumor cells. It's something
24 we're in the middle of right now, and I can't talk
25 about it yet. We're too early in the game.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 One may be able to do this to some
2 extent with PCR, but it's limited, and of course, we
3 can get viable cells. We haven't exploited that
4 option yet, but it might be worthwhile.

5 Now, in terms of the theme of this study
6 or I should say of this session, I mean, I would
7 think that if we get further with our method that we
8 should be able to be of help to you in terms of
9 accurately determining the number of tumor cells
10 that you have and their quality, and I think the
11 latter is going to be more important.

12 I mean, our current plans are basically
13 to take 30 mL of blood, use 15 mL for more
14 immunophenotyping and to look at other antigens that
15 will be helpful in terms of determining the organ of
16 origin of the tumor, I mean, mammoglobin for breast,
17 PSA for prostate, et cetera, and use the other half
18 for multi-color FISH.

19 And you know, changes in copy number of
20 proteins to the chromosome are seen very early in
21 the game in breast cancer, and Dr. Reed with just a
22 small number of probes has been able to detect
23 these, and of course, there's an unlimited number of
24 probes that you can use in multi-color FISH in
25 contrast to immunophenotyping, and basically, I

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 mean, one can easily look for amplification of HER-
2 2, P-53 mutations, et cetera.

3 So I think that the quality of those
4 cells may be very critical in determining how many
5 you can have. I think it would vary tremendously
6 between tumors, well, and between patients with the
7 same tumor depending on what those genetic changes
8 are and those phenotypic changes.

9 One will have to look at those and then
10 correlate it with the subsequent course of the
11 patient, I suppose, to get a definitive answer.

12 We're particularly interested in
13 screening. I mean, we've done some bloods from
14 patients with colon and lung cancer, and I think
15 this test will work for all of the carcinomas.

16 I haven't discussed prognostication, but
17 there's some major opportunities for a test that can
18 prognosticate whether, for example, the cells that
19 are circulating already represent metastatic cells
20 that are destined for apoptosis, and again, I'm
21 hoping the combination of cell count, of
22 immunophenotyping, and of multi-color FISH will give
23 us information which, in toto, will tell us or
24 perhaps answer that or answer it at least for a
25 proportion of the patients. It would be attractive

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 not to have to do mutilating operations on a patient
2 who has a particular set of criteria where you can
3 unambiguously say that patient has cancer.

4 I want to emphasize that. To replace
5 the gold standard of biopsy and to act with
6 treatment decisions on this, you need another gold
7 standard. So it has to be rigorous. There can be
8 no false positives. You can have some false
9 negatives where you miss some here or there, but
10 when you say this patient has cancer on the basis of
11 a blood test, it has to be 100 percent.

12 It's not that difficult to do. You just
13 have to examine every patient that comes in with a
14 lump in the breast, get the criteria, and then code
15 the sample, get an answer, and then see what
16 criteria unambiguously mean cancer. The same thing
17 can be done for all the other tumors.

18 It would be very attractive if one knew
19 that a patient who had a mastectomy was cured. In
20 the best of all worlds, if you found there were no
21 cells after that in 90 percent of the patients and
22 ten percent did have cells, and those ten percent
23 went on eventually to relapse, you would save 90
24 percent of the patients from having the high dose
25 adjuvant chemotherapy which they presently have,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 which is disabling, and some of the disabling is
2 irreversible.

3 So there are opportunities to do
4 prognostication here that are attractive, but our
5 first ambition, our first goal is to develop this as
6 a screening method, and we have a long way to go
7 because it has to be, as I told you, a gold
8 standard, and I hope to reach that goal if I could
9 ever get funding from the NCI.

10 (Laughter.)

11 DR. UHR: Thank you.

12 (Applause.)

13 DR. GREENBLATT: I apologize, but you
14 know, emotions overcame me.

15 (Laughter.)

16 DR. GREENBLATT: Would someone give me
17 the program so I can introduce the next group of
18 speakers? I forgot to bring it up.

19 Okay. You're still on Thursday, Jay.
20 This is -- we've moved ahead.

21 Okay. The next talk is by Dr. Dave
22 Hoon, entitled "Detection of Occult Tumor Cells in
23 Body Fluids and Lymphoid Tissues by a Multiple
24 Marker PCR Assay," and Dr. Hoon comes from the John
25 Wayne Cancer Institute.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. HOON: I'd like to thank the
2 coordinators for this meeting and Raj for this
3 excellent meeting. It has been very informative.

4 And in this session, what I've been told
5 is to try to interpret my work in terms of
6 microdiagnostic and what may be relative to
7 assessing vaccines and actually addressing sources
8 of potential cells for use in vaccines.

9 So what I will do is cover some of our
10 work studying molecular diagnosis and try to
11 interpret and to fit into the theme of this meeting.

12 Can I get the first slide?

13 So the talk is basically going to focus
14 on occult tumor cells and different body
15 compartments, and primarily I'm going to talk about
16 solid tumors. That's where most of our experience
17 is, particularly melanoma, breast cancer, and GI
18 cancer.

19 Now, you can look at occult tumor cells
20 using PCR or TPCR. I don't have to go through the
21 procedure. I mean, most people are familiar with
22 that, and basically you can look at different sites,
23 organ sites, tissue in non-organs such as skin,
24 tumor draining lymph nodes, fine aspirates and body
25 fluids and blood, which is the most optimal, usually

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 the site which can be used repetitive assessment,
2 peritoneal cavity, bone marrow aspirations, which is
3 well, know, cerebral spinal fluids, and lymphatic
4 drainage fluids from wounds you can use.

5 Now, to those skeptics, as Dr. Uhr has
6 said, there are tumor cells in blood, and you can
7 actually detect them. Often some people don't
8 believe in that, but they are and you can find them.

9 Now, this is a slide that was shown
10 earlier by Dr. Morton, but again, I want to
11 emphasize this in more of a molecular term. The
12 heterogeneity in melanoma, you can get different
13 pigmentations which often interprets different
14 levels of messenger RNA for the different pigments,
15 such as tyrosinase, TRP-1, 2, GP-100.

16 Similarly, when you get metastasis, you
17 can get changes in pigmentation, adaptation, and so
18 the tumor is often continually evolving, and there's
19 a continual genetic instability which interprets
20 changes in tumor antigen expression, and this is
21 important. It's an inherent problem, particularly
22 when you're doing molecular diagnosis with
23 particular markers.

24 And this just reiterates the point that
25 you can have metastasis made up of many or primaries

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 made up of many clones, and metastasis does not
2 necessarily, can reflect what the primary is, and
3 you can get metastasis from a metastasis, whereby
4 this is amelanotic and it can go adapt to a distant
5 organ, and it can turn back into melanotic tumor.

6 So a tumor is constantly progressing,
7 and it can change at different organ sites. There
8 is no rule to say it will always maintain that
9 particular phenotype, and that's one of the inherent
10 problems in addressing therapy, and it's one of the
11 inherent problems in vaccines.

12 And you saw this slide earlier from
13 others. It showed that in melanin synthesis
14 pathways, tyrosinase, TRP-1 and TRP-2, and for
15 molecular markers, differentiation antigens for a
16 particular tumor which is derived from a org. cell
17 type that has particular markers you can use as good
18 markers that are not found in normal cells, and in
19 melanoma, this is where most of the work and a lot
20 of detection of molecular diagnosis for occult tumor
21 cells has been successful because the markers are
22 very unique.

23 The markers are not totally unique in
24 that you can find these myelogenesis markers, part
25 of the dopamine cascade, which is found in retinoid,

S A G CORP.

1 and you can also find in the brain tissue and neural
2 tissues. So it's not totally absolute, but in the
3 compartment that you're testing in, such as lymph
4 nodes, bone marrow or blood, it is not present.

5 So one of our concepts that we developed
6 in the early '90s was using -- because of the
7 heterogeneity problem, we addressed this by tumor
8 marker heterogeneity. So we established the
9 multiple marker concept. This is, in other words,
10 using multiple markers to address the tumor marker
11 heterogeneity, knowing that primary metastases or as
12 the tumors continue to evolve, they are going to
13 change. You have to address that that no single
14 marker is always going to be present. So this is
15 very important.

16 The other, which is often forgotten, is
17 marker level of expression. You can have different
18 levels of mRNA expression of a particular -- like,
19 for example, tyrosinase which can vary from one
20 melanoma cell to another cell, and that's a common
21 factor that's often ignored.

22 So when you're looking at occult tumor
23 cells, basically tumor cells, melanoma cells, for
24 example, with a certain number of messenger RNA
25 diluted in normal cells, you get a dilution factor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and which will affect your assay and how sensitive
2 it is. So you also have to address that.

3 Another problem of single marker assays
4 is you get false positives, which it often
5 addressed.

6 The other is having a multiple marker,
7 and these several markers are two marker at least
8 positive, confidence in the assay, and it proves the
9 assay sensitivity and specificity, and this is what
10 our overall design of all of our systems has been
11 based on.

12 These are some of the early markers that
13 we use. Obviously there's more, but you can divide
14 markers into melanoma, myelogenesis related,
15 tyrosinase, TRP-1, TRP-2, GP-100, MART-1. You can
16 do tumor progression markers, MUC-18, gangliocytes,
17 and there's the tumor antigen markers. There are a
18 lot more out there now. This list keeps on growing
19 and growing, and they can be used as potential
20 markers if they're screened through.

21 In our assay, it's a very simple assay.
22 It's basically an 8 mL assay with sodium citrate-2.
23 We collect the blood. RNA is extracted under SOP,
24 and the quality control is done in the whole assay
25 system.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I mean, the assay looks very simple, but
2 if it is not done under rigorous conditions, you
3 insert many types of errors and also contamination
4 problems which will reflect your results. So SOPs
5 are very -- especially in these sensitive assays --
6 are absolutely necessary, and the environment that
7 they're conducted in.

8 And this is just one of our earlier
9 studies I want to discuss that we had published
10 several years ago where we used this set of markers,
11 four markers, tyrosinase, P-97, melanin transferase,
12 MAGE-3 and MUC-18, and this is in melanoma cell
13 lines it's expressed frequently, but most markers
14 often are over expressed in melanoma cell lines and
15 often not representative of true biopsies. And in
16 normal cells, they're negative except for MUC-18
17 where we find some.

18 Then we perform studies on different
19 stages of patients and taking a blood sample, and
20 categorizing the stage at the time of the blood
21 sample, as you can see, there's a wide distribution.

22 There's heterogeneity in the markers,
23 and at the same time they're more frequently in the
24 advanced stages as expected.

S A G CORP.

1 And this is just to compare one marker
2 versus two marker positive. We find at the advanced
3 stages we usually have a greater number of two
4 marker positives, and this is what we based the two
5 marker cutoff.

6 And from our studies in this type of
7 study we found the specificity about 95 percent and
8 96 percent for sensitivity, and since then we've
9 actually adapted, changed this assay to a more
10 refined assay. Actually you can get a much higher
11 sensitivity and specificity now, refining our
12 markers.

13 But in looking at those patients I just
14 showed you, we looked at the Stage III NED patients.
15 These are basically patients who are bled and had no
16 evidence of disease at the time of blood draw, and
17 then we followed these patients up for now over two
18 and a half years, and basically we compared those
19 with one marker or no marker positive versus two and
20 four marker positive, and this is the current
21 survival curve showing that the patients at two or
22 four markers had a greater incidence of
23 reoccurrence. It's about almost 75. Twenty-five
24 percent reoccurred within one year, and this was
25 significant.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 There's also a multivariate analysis
2 comparing the standard factors that are used in
3 melanoma, the natural history of reoccurrence.

4 Similarly, in longer follow-up, the one
5 marker or no marker did better versus the two of
6 four markers, which is almost now 50 percent in
7 reoccurrence of disease.

8 And these studies initially showed us
9 that you can use these for prognostic advantages in
10 looking at whether the potential of these patients
11 for reoccurrence, and also they tell you does
12 detection of tumor cells in blood in clinical free
13 patients -- are they having any significance, and
14 that's what we were addressing.

15 Also, the other thing that they also
16 said is that looking at tumor cells in the blood and
17 seeing it's positive, it also addresses whether you
18 have sub -- we call it subclinical disease, and to
19 prove that, as Dr. Uhr said earlier today, you have
20 to verify it, and it does take some clinical follow-
21 up to verify whether these are really going to be
22 relevant, these tumor cells in the blood, and there
23 has to be some standards in clinical trials, which
24 currently we're doing this in a multi-institute
25 international trial looking at bloods from patients

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and being treated and following up for over five
2 years.

3 Similarly, you also have to look at the
4 clinical follow-up, and it has to be done very
5 rigorously and well documented, and these patients
6 were basically followed up every two months with
7 rigorous analysis for reoccurrence of disease.

8 Another assay that we developed based on
9 the three marker system using a semi-quantitative
10 approach where we based on the number of marker
11 positives and doing different dilutions of the
12 blood, and basically to go over this quickly, a
13 scale of zero to ten where ten is highly positive,
14 basically very strongly positive, and zero is none.

15 In this system one of the best ways for
16 identifying clinical disease is surgical staging, in
17 other words, a surgical removal of the tumor to make
18 the patient disease free and then looking at the
19 blood before and after to really identify are you
20 removing the disease and does it have an effect on
21 the blood, and this is what we were doing pre and
22 post surgery, and these are the types of stage of
23 disease, and these are the size of the tumors.

24 As you can see, the larger the tumor,
25 there was a significant decrease in the actual

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 values, and where the patient has a very small
2 single node of metastasis, there was limited change,
3 as you expect, but this is the type of studies that
4 we're doing to validate the assay and looking at pre
5 and post surgery.

6 Using the same assay for semi-
7 quantitative and looking at different stages of
8 disease, when you talk about stages of disease you
9 have to say is there no evidence of disease or alive
10 with disease and compare the two different
11 categories, and you can see in the different stages
12 that especially I and II and II, NED and AWD,
13 there's a significant difference between the groups.

14 However, in the Stage IV, there isn't,
15 and usually in Stage IV, as you know, they often
16 reoccur very quickly. They usually have subclinical
17 disease or smoldering disease that's usually
18 present, and as you expect.

19 And these studies are ongoing. This is
20 based on 75 patients, and now we are accruing more
21 patients to really validate the significance of
22 these findings.

23 Going into another, I talked about the
24 myelogenesis markers. There are other markers, and
25 here we use a carbohydrate marker, which was a tumor

S A G CORP.

1 antigen. It's originally defined by Dr. Ricco Eerie,
2 GM-2 and GD-2 as oncophetyl antigens in the early
3 '80s, and in recent years the clinical utility of
4 GM-2 has been shown by Phil Livingston in terms of
5 vaccines, and so we developed an assay to look at
6 synthesis of GM-2/GD-2, what we call as basically
7 the enzyme, and a set of galactose immune
8 transferase.

9 And this, just to go over it quickly,
10 this is just a comparison showing the blots. These
11 are Southern blots, RTPCR and Southern blots. This
12 is genomic. This is the actually PCR band, and it
13 shows you the biopsies in patients who are positive,
14 Stage III and IV, and controls.

15 And then what we did here is melanoma
16 cell lines showing the different blots, and we did
17 the actual ganglioside isolation biochemistry
18 analysis showing GM-2 and GD-2 levels of cell lines
19 and how it correlates to actually the MRNA level,
20 and this is a correlation study.

21 And this just shows you what we did in
22 looking at different stages of disease. As you can
23 see, overall they are found in different stages of
24 disease. However, the overall difference is not
25 that significant, and so that they're there or

S A G CORP.

1 they're not there, and that led us to what's the
2 advantage of this marker just as opposed to
3 detection.

4 And then what we did was look at
5 patients who had a certain level of disease and then
6 follow them up over a year and looked at whether
7 they had progressed or they didn't progress, and
8 then looked at actually whether they were positive
9 or negative.

10 And what we found is a significant
11 correlation of those that were positive that
12 reoccurred, clinical reoccurrence of disease in a
13 short period of time. In other words, the patients
14 who were GM-2 positive from their blood developed
15 disease much faster than those who were negative,
16 and so we call this as a potential progression
17 marker that can be used to identify reoccurrence of
18 disease.

19 Another site which is often used
20 especially in breast cancer is bone marrow
21 aspirations, and this, as was talked about in this
22 meeting, is also a source for getting stem cells and
23 dendritic cells.

24 And we know in bone marrow tumor cells
25 occur quite frequently, especially in breast cancer

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and in prostate cancer, but an unusual finding that
2 we found actually four or five years ago, that in
3 melanoma there are occult tumor cells in the bone
4 marrow.

5 However, in general, metastasis to
6 melanoma is less than ten to 15 percent, and bony
7 metastasis rarely occur, but we find a great
8 frequency, and other groups have also now found
9 this, too, that there are more tumor cells actually
10 present, occult tumor cells. Whether they were
11 alive or dormant, we don't know, but it's very
12 frequent.

13 Now, actually this study was not a bone
14 marrow aspiration. This was actually a bone marrow
15 biopsy. During thoracotomies for melanoma patients,
16 that's what Dr. Morton was doing, and part of the
17 procedure is to remove about an inch of the rib, and
18 what we did was take and remove the rib and took out
19 the marrow and then assessed for tumor cells. So
20 this is actually a direct assessment of patients
21 with metastasis in the lung undergoing
22 thoracotomies.

23 And similarly, we've also now done with
24 melanoma -- these are studies with Steve O'Day in
25 our clinic -- and looking at bone marrow aspirates,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 and we can use different markers, and we can show
2 that there are actually tumor melanoma cells in the
3 bone marrow.

4 And also studies have reported that
5 colon cancer, which doesn't metastasize to the bone
6 marrow, but actually there are occult tumor cells.
7 So bone marrow may act as a sponge or actually as an
8 indicator that metastasis has occurred, systemic
9 metastasis has occurred at some point during that
10 patient's life, evolution of their tumor, but when
11 it occurs or not and somehow the tumor cells stay
12 stable.

13 A lot of extensive studies have done
14 immunocytochemistry, such as by Richard Codey,
15 especially in the relevance of bone marrow
16 metastasis in breast cancer.

17 Another study that we do, it was
18 pioneered at John Wayne, is the sentinel lymph node
19 study, lymphatic mapping. This is a study that was
20 developed by Dr. Morton and his colleagues for
21 identifying the first draining node which is likely
22 to have metastasis.

23 And in this study what our objective was
24 is to look at the detection of occult tumor cells in
25 that lymph node, and what we devised is a plan where

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 we bivalve the node, section the node, using the
2 frozen sections and with parallel section we do
3 immunohistochemistry and HNE, and then do RTPCR, and
4 this alternates to detect occult tumor cells.

5 In other words, this was a focused
6 attack to detect occult tumor cells in the draining
7 lymph node, and as you know, in melanoma and breast
8 cancer, the draining lymph node positivity is a very
9 important staging factor, and this is a question
10 that we're addressing in one of our central mode
11 randomized trial, is to determine what is the real
12 value of actually occult tumor cells, and we still
13 don't know.

14 In breast cancer, single occult tumor
15 cells, we still don't know the total relevance.
16 When we see micrometastases, it can be multiple
17 cells or it can be single cells, and we still don't
18 know what their relevance is still at this point
19 until further studies are done.

20 But just to show us for our melanoma
21 studies that you can use parallel melanoma markers
22 that we've used, and you can see in all sorts of
23 different levels of frequency showing the
24 heterogeneity and the different levels, and these
25 are actually HNE positive tumors. So these are well

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 defined metastases showing, and if you do IHC, in
2 other words, histochemistry, to define occult
3 tumors, this varies even more because you have a
4 more dilution effect.

5 And this just shows you the seminal
6 lymph node study.

7 So in other words, combining the
8 sentinel lymph node study with molecular diagnosis
9 provides one of the most focal attacks of trying to
10 detect occult tumor cells, and the draining node is
11 likely to have tumor cells, and this is ongoing
12 studies in both melanoma and breast cancer.

13 And this is actually important as some
14 of the issues individuals here have been discussing
15 about using lymph nodes as a source, and one of the
16 problems is having a few occult tumor cells --
17 really do mean anything, and still we don't really
18 know, in other words, occult tumor cells that can be
19 define by immunohistochemistry that maybe a few
20 cells are those.

21 Obviously when you have well established
22 micrometastasis by HNE, there is definitely major
23 disease.

24 And so when we look at different sites
25 as I showed, lymph nodes, bone marrows and blood,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 one of the problems is in PCR you have to always
2 address to the background expression of normal
3 cells. Our sensitivity in melanoma, I always
4 usually say one in five cells because you never can
5 really tell one cell error in a limiting dilution.
6 It's about one in five cells for melanoma in about
7 40 to 50 million because in melanoma you have a
8 good, definitive marker.

9 In carcinomas you drop down to ten to 20
10 million and using a panel of multiple markers.

11 The other is you've got to have
12 different stringencies. Obviously in the lymph node
13 you're going to get more contamination of normal
14 cells in there. It's always draining, especially in
15 the breast cancer. You always get epithelial cells,
16 normal draining into the lymph node. It's just a
17 fact that occurs.

18 And specificity of the reaction, and
19 final verification of the PC viral product and
20 genomic contamination.

21 This is a study which I want to
22 emphasize on some reports in the literature which we
23 have also published. There are several markers out
24 there that have used CEA, CK-19, MUC-1 as RTPCR
25 markers. Although people consistently use these

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 markers, they have shown considerable false
2 positives.

3 When you have greater than five to ten
4 percent false positives, you have problems in your
5 detection assays, and this just shows you -- I can
6 give you the names of the list -- but these are from
7 various publications that show the level of false
8 positives just by RTPCR of these markers, and it's
9 well demonstrated in the literature, and these are
10 some other studies.

11 And so these markers for carcinomas are
12 really not well established, and there's very few
13 good markers out there for carcinomas for RTPCR
14 because of this problem, and this is going to be a
15 problem until new markers are really defined.

16 And the other problem with the markers
17 is that when you establish a marker, you want
18 consistency. As I said earlier, you have
19 heterogeneity. There's no use having a marker
20 that's only ten percent because you're only going to
21 get ten percent. You're not going to pick up all of
22 the tumors.

23 And when you're hunting for occult tumor
24 cells from metastasis or not, your efficiency is not

1 going to be there. So you have to look at that very
2 critically when you design this.

3 And epithelial cells, carcinomas,
4 basically we still have a long way to go in this
5 field.

6 Similarly, if you look at
7 immunohistochemistry of breast cancer, there are
8 still trials, and the American College of Surgeons
9 is going to run a randomized study looking at a
10 cocktail of antibodies looking at occult tumor cells
11 soon to determine whether the efficacy of actually
12 detection.

13 These are some of the markers that we
14 use in breast cancer. I can show you the cell lines
15 and tumors and bloods. These are 75 patients we
16 looked at.

17 MAGE-3, any of the MAGE families are
18 very good real tumor markers, solid, and they can be
19 used very efficiently.

20 And this is beta hCG, which we also use.
21 It also can be used quite well.

22 Factors influencing results, and there's
23 multiple factors, and whenever you look at any of
24 these PCR molecular assays, they always have to be

1 optimized and SOPs under rigorous control.
2 Otherwise you bring in a lot of errors.

3 As I said, SOPs. This is a standard
4 SOP. I'm sorry it's upside down, but this is our
5 system that we run.

6 (Laughter.)

7 DR. HOON: And contamination, which is
8 very important, and especially when you're doing
9 this section. It has to be determined.

10 And the fusion of the two evolving
11 technologies. Amplification technologies are
12 constantly changing. The methods, the markers, and
13 specificity are changing, and eventually we will
14 have good assays that are of clinical pathological
15 utility.

16 And these are some of our recent
17 studies. Now we've converted away from gel
18 electrophoresis and are now straight doing solution
19 PCR using electroluminescence where we get more
20 quantitative analysis and definitive. So you can
21 basically now run the PCR for a patient and know
22 within four to six hours from a sample. So no more
23 gel electrophoresis. We've changed the whole
24 system, and the least quantitation also.

1 One of the questions that was addressed
2 for this symposium is what is the fate of occult
3 tumor cells. The positive scenario is obviously the
4 growth of tumors, and the other is metastasis at
5 distal sites, and another is dormancy which can
6 occur.

7 The negative scenario is natural
8 inherent death, apoptosis, or most of the cells
9 don't survive. Metastasis is basically very
10 inefficient, and therefore, often none of the
11 learning cells don't, and as we discussed in the
12 last two days, immune regulation destroys tumors.
13 So that plays a factor.

14 And lastly is the questions that need to
15 be asked. What is the role of occult tumor cells
16 detected by immunohistochemistry? We still don't
17 know this fully, and there are still trials out
18 there.

19 And the same thing. Until we know this,
20 this is still going to be difficult to answer. So
21 there are still some questions to be answered.

22 Thank you.

23 (Applause.)

24 DR. GREENBLATT: Thank you for your
25 talk.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I just wanted to introduce our last
2 speaker, Dr. Carleton Stewart, and he will be
3 talking on detection of cancer cells in bone marrow
4 by high speed cell sorting.

5 Dr. Stewart.

6 DR. STEWART: Thank you.

7 Well, first I'd like to thank the
8 organizers for inviting me to this really what I
9 call a very relevant meeting, not only relevant for
10 what we're facing now, but relevant for me, in
11 particular, because we're monitoring a lot of the
12 very tests that have been discussed here, and I'd
13 like to do it right.

14 Now I can assure myself that nobody knows what right
15 is.

16 (Laughter.)

17 DR. STEWART: But basically what we're
18 looking at about four years ago our approach or our
19 challenge was to try to monitor hematopoietic
20 products that are going to be used for autologous
21 transplants in breast cancer patients, and we
22 started out to do that, and we didn't think about
23 using iron particles with the antibodies attached to
24 them because that's a very inexpensive way to do it

1 compared to spend a half a million dollars for a
2 high speed cell sorter.

3 Fortunately, we have other applications
4 for the high speed cell sorter, and so the first
5 thing that we see is this is what we see in a
6 microscope. Is there a tumor cell in this field?

7 And with a fluorescent marker we can
8 find those tumor cells or we can find cells that
9 masquerade as tumor cells, and as we've heard, 100
10 percent positivity, that is, we have to be positive
11 that it's a cancer cell and not a cell masquerading
12 as a cancer cell when we look at this cell.

13 And flow cytometry allows us to do two
14 things. It allows us to put multiple markers
15 together so that we can get better sensitivity and
16 specificity, and the only way we're going to get
17 sensitivity is to run enough cells.

18 And so a high speed sorter can process
19 150 million cells an hour, and we can sort those
20 cells on a microscope slide, and if you had one in a
21 million, that means you can sort 100 of those cells
22 on a microscope slide and use independent technology
23 to confirm, as we've already seen from Dr. Uhr's
24 talk, that that is a tumor cell.

S A G CORP.

1 And here we see a cancer patient in
2 which we looked at the blood of that cancer patient,
3 and you can see that there are no tumor cells.
4 There are no cytokeratin positive cells in this
5 region.

6 Here's CD-45 versus cytokeratin, but
7 when we look at the bone marrow of this very same
8 person at the very same time, we see a very high
9 frequency of tumor cells.

10 So the first message is that they may
11 accumulate in the bone marrow, but they may be
12 moving by quickly in the blood, and so the bone
13 marrow could be a much more sensitive place for
14 detection of these cells, but certainly we probably
15 wouldn't want to give this preparation back to the
16 patient.

17 Now, in comparing the original tumor,
18 and this is often one of our -- is to be able to
19 phenotype the original tumor, the primary tumor from
20 the breast cancer patient and then look because now
21 you know what markers they express, and use that to
22 develop individual, specific cocktails for finding
23 these cells.

24 And here we see that in the original
25 tumor in this case DNA is the only marker. The bone

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 marrow has exactly the same DNA content as the
2 original tumor, and this bone marrow was taken
3 almost a year later after the primary surgery
4 resection on this cancer patient.

5 And so looking at our experience up
6 through about 1997, we see a couple of things.
7 First of all, there were 21 patients that we called
8 negative or indeterminate for whether there were
9 circulating tumor cells.

10 Now, remember we're measuring 100
11 million cells here, and you could see that normal,
12 healthy donors like me -- huh, some people think I'm
13 health; some don't -- there were 906 breast cancer
14 cells in males and females who were healthy, right?
15 That is sensitivity, but not specificity.

16 Those are not cancer cells. They're not
17 even epithelial cells. It isn't the result of
18 sticking a needle into your arm to get the blood.
19 I'll tell you what it is a result of in a second,
20 but they're not tumor cells.

21 And here we have patients which have a
22 lower frequency in the 21 patients here than a
23 normal, healthy donor does.

24 Now, here we see the matched health
25 donor with patients in which there are more tumor

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 cells or there are more cells in the eight tumor
2 patients than there are in the healthy donors. Are
3 these tumor cells? Just because there's a
4 difference, a mathematical difference, is that tumor
5 cells? Is that tumor cells? Is that specificity or
6 is that by chance? I mean seven out of 21 patients.

7 I think you'll agree probably this one
8 might have contaminating tumor cells, but I don't
9 know what the other ones have.

10 And so we set out to find out what cells
11 are in normal, healthy people that meet the criteria
12 of being a cytokeratin positive, CD-45 negative
13 cell, and it's a lot of fun because the world of
14 rare events is almost as much fun as the world of
15 lots of events.

16 And so the first thing we need to do is
17 develop an assay that not only is sensitive, but is
18 also specific, and so we have some definitions here.

19 First of all, criteria regions are
20 Boolean combinations of regions designed to resolve
21 cells of interest. Does that means cells of
22 interest are really the cells we're interested in?
23 Maybe.

1 Events are particles that are acquired
2 by a flow cytometer. Did I say "cells"? I said
3 "particles."

4 Positive events are events that are
5 above some marker we set that we call positive.
6 They're positive for that marker, but what does that
7 mean? What is being positive for a marker?

8 Now, positive cells -- there's a
9 different question -- are the cells that actually
10 express the epitope for the antibody.

11 Specificity is the frequency or
12 percentage of positive events in the criteria
13 region, events, not cells. But specificity is the
14 frequency of positive cells, the real cell, in the
15 criteria region, and this is the only thing we want
16 to measure.

17 Here we see a blood specimen in which we
18 have stained the cells with a combination of CD-32,
19 41, 45, and CD-105, and you can see that in this
20 combination we have MUC-1 and we have ERB B-2, and
21 we have cytokeratin.

22 Now, if we collect this many events,
23 we're pretty happy. We didn't collect enough events
24 to find out if there's any cells masquerading in
25 this normal blood. You've got to collect enough to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 see them, and so we are going to set a region in
2 which we are going to collect cytokeratin positive
3 cells.

4 And you can see here that this is a
5 normal person which has 900-some odd masquerading
6 tumor cells per million, but if now we say that
7 these cells also have to be MUC-1 positive and ERB
8 B-2 positive, and we call this combination of
9 antibodies here our heme combination, we now see
10 there are no cells per million that are in our
11 criteria regions.

12 Now, I don't have enough time to show
13 you all of the evidence, but basically what we did
14 was to sort each of the populations and identify
15 them that were contaminating from a healthy donor
16 the criteria regions.

17 We found they were eosinophils,
18 eosinophils. What are eosinophils doing CD-45
19 negative? Well, that's a whole other question I can
20 write an NIH grant for, right? And you're all going
21 to give me the money. A very important question,
22 CD-45 negative eosinophils. But they are CD-32
23 positive.

24 What about CD-41, micro megakaryocytes?
25 I don't know if they're cytokeratin positive or not,

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 but they are positive events that contaminate the
2 cytokeratin window, and we can get rid of them by
3 simply adding CD-41, and when you sort them, I call
4 them the Spidermen of your blood, because they have
5 these gorgeous nuclei that stain blue with Herkst
6 (phonetic) and they look just like Spiderman outfit,
7 as the platelets that have not yet fragmented. And
8 every single person in this room has them
9 circulating right now.

10 And a third are endothelial cells. In
11 fact, I told a colleague of mine about this, and we
12 sorted some, and she's growing them in vitro, in
13 culture now, right from your blood, endothelials.
14 Just take them out of your arm and put them in
15 culture. You can grow your own endothelial cells.
16 You don't have to pay all of this money for this
17 cocktail to grow the ones from the repositories.
18 You can get them right out of your own arm.

19 (Laughter.)

20 DR. STEWART: Now, we look at just a
21 proof of principle. We contaminate this preparation
22 of blood with a tumor cell line, which happens to be
23 cytokeratin positive, MUC-1 positive, and ERB B-2
24 positive. Oh, wouldn't it be wonderful if everybody
25 was like that? It always works with cell lines.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 Make the biggest claims with the least amount of
2 data.

3 And there are the cytokeratin positive
4 tumor cells. If we -- oops, I think it's tired --
5 and you can see now that we are seeing our
6 cytokeratin positive cells here, but are there any
7 contaminating blood cells?

8 Well, we know there are because I showed
9 you the specimen we didn't contaminate, but again,
10 if we now go to our most stringent criteria where
11 they have to be negative for this, positive for
12 cytokeratin, MUC-1 and ERB B-2, the data that we get
13 by adding the number added and the number we found,
14 which is this one, which is the highest specificity,
15 we have recovered virtually all of the tumor cells
16 without any contamination at one to a million.

17 So are there two per million? Well,
18 let's see. Maybe.

19 And here's a normal and floor patients.
20 These are the actual ones. If we looked at
21 cytokeratin, we have 1,778 tumor cells in this
22 normal person. I don't think so.

23 And we see that these patients have lie
24 numbers (phonetic). If we now take our HEEM
25 negative cells, we now add that to our criteria. We

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 now have one in 12,000 or one in 13,000 that still
2 meet that criteria.

3 If we add MUC-1, we have now one in
4 168,000. That's our specificity, and if we now add
5 ERB B-2 so that we now have one, two, three tumor
6 markers, we now have greater than one -- we have
7 less than one in a million masquerading cells in our
8 blood, and yet we can still see that we can detect
9 significant numbers of cells in the patient except
10 for Patient 4, which we could not detect any tumor
11 cells.

12 So with high speed sorting then, we can
13 interrogate 100 million cells in 55 minutes and sort
14 in this example 746 cells onto a microscope slide
15 for further study.

16 Thank you.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. GREENBLATT: Thank you.

19 I'd like to thank all of the speakers of
20 this session and all of the speakers we've had over
21 the last two days, and could those who are
22 participating in the panel discussion come up to the
23 podium?

24 DR. RAZZAQUE: I would like to start
25 discussion on this session, Session V. On page 56

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 of the program book, you will find two sets of
2 questions. The first set of questions are on
3 detection and characterization of contaminating
4 tumor cells in cell vaccines.

5 The second set of questions are on dose
6 selection for irradiation of tumor cells to be used
7 as vaccines.

8 You know that tumor cells are sent into
9 the peripheral blood and may reside in the bone
10 marrow. So when you use these cells, PBMCs and bone
11 marrow, for generating cell vaccines, for example,
12 dendritic cells as you have heard in this two-day
13 meeting, there is a chance that you might pick up
14 contaminating tumor cells.

15 To insure the safety of these kinds of
16 vaccines, cell vaccines, we have formulated some
17 questions, and we need to address these questions in
18 this session.

19 Dr. Uhr has shown a method of detection
20 of cancer cells in blood, and he has detected one in
21 ten to the eighth cells in leukocytes by
22 immunomagnetic amplification, flow cytometry, et
23 cetera.

24 Dr. Stewart has shown a high speed cell
25 sorting method of detection of cells, and Dr. Hoon

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 has shown PCR method of detection of contaminating
2 tumor cells.

3 With that I would like to ask the first
4 question to the panel and to the audience to be
5 addressed. The first question is: what would
6 constitute acceptable methods for identification,
7 quantitation, and characterization?

8 Panel, please.

9 DR. UHR: I think it might be in the
10 future -- let me just say this. I can't answer any
11 of these questions, and I don't think they're
12 answerable right now.

13 But I think in the future one might well
14 be using all three, a combination of all three of
15 the techniques we're discussing. One is going to
16 have to be able to count the cells, and one is going
17 to have to characterize them in great depth, both in
18 terms of the proteins they make and in terms of
19 their genetic alterations.

20 I mean, as a simple example, if you find
21 a certain number of cells, X number of cells in the
22 bone marrow after purging, and these cells have
23 amplification of HER-2; they make a lot of Cyclin-D;
24 they have some replication, invasive markers, et
25 cetera. One would speculate that one might have to

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 remove more of those than if you have the same
2 number or smaller number of cells which don't have
3 HER-2 amplification, which lack many of the markers,
4 let's say, that we associate with aggressiveness in
5 terms of tumor cells.

6 In fact, what if none of them are
7 dividing, or some of them have some of the changes
8 of apoptosis, membrane flipping, for example?

9 So it seems to me that it's going to be
10 different with different tumors and among different
11 patients, and there will be heterogeneity even
12 within the cells of the same patients, as has been
13 carefully brought out.

14 So you'll want a technique where you
15 could look at a lot of cells quickly. Whether it's
16 slide based or through the flow cytometer, I don't
17 know because they keep on improving both, and you
18 might well want to do some PCRs to pick up
19 particular mutations which can't be done by multi-
20 color FISH on interface cells, et cetera.

21 So I think one might well not pick out a
22 technique now, but say that we may well have to use
23 all of the advances that take place from these three
24 different approaches.

25 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Stewart, please.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. STEWART: Yeah, I certainly agree
2 with that. The techniques we use are going to be
3 the most difficult thing to answer, but in my
4 opinion there's only one question, and it's a tough
5 question.

6 The only thing we have to know is if the
7 tumor cell that we see contaminating the bone marrow
8 or the blood or wherever is clonogenic because I
9 don't really care how many tumor cells there are in
10 this patient's bone marrow if there are in any of
11 them clonogenic.

12 And so the challenge we have is to
13 develop a reliable assay for clonogenicity, and it
14 may, indeed, include all of the assays that Dr. Uhr
15 just mentioned, but that is our challenge, to
16 determine and select a clonogenic tumor cell.

17 And I think Dr. Hoon's data where he
18 sees melanoma cells in the bone marrow and there
19 aren't any melanomas growing in the bone marrow is
20 an example of that, and we have lots of examples of
21 that, not just that one.

22 DR. UHR: Can I just mention I'd like to
23 throw in an addendum to that? I don't like to
24 disagree with Dr. Stewart. I enjoyed his
25 presentation too much.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 (Laughter.)

2 DR. UHR: But tumor dormancy is a
3 problem. I mean I personally think cancer is a
4 chronic disease. It disseminates very early, and
5 then after you, quote, cure the patient, there are
6 still the cells that are around. We know that's
7 classical for melanoma and for breast cancer. They
8 come back as late as four decades later. But I
9 think it's true for many of the other cancers,
10 perhaps all of them.

11 So the fact that you might have a
12 clonogenic cell doesn't in itself definitively
13 indicate that you are going to have in vivo, in this
14 particular micro environment, growth or that the
15 growth may not be balanced by cell death.

16 For example, in the mouse model that we
17 use, most of the cells are in cell cycle arrest.
18 There is a population of a million cells in the
19 spleen, and they're dormant. The animals are
20 heavily immunized, and most of them are in cell
21 cycle arrest, but a subset are dividing and
22 apparently dying at the same rate by apoptosis
23 because they carry the same one million cells
24 throughout their life.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 I don't know whether this is going to be
2 the same in the human or not, but I think
3 clonogenicity would be worrisome, but it wouldn't
4 necessarily equate with the fact that these will not
5 be dormant.

6 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Stewart, do you want
7 to comment on that?

8 DR. STEWART: I would like to respond to
9 that quickly.

10 DR. RAZZAQUE: Yes.

11 DR. STEWART: And that is my definition
12 of clonogenicity does include dormancy. A
13 clonogenic cell could very well be dormant. We have
14 to find the assays that are going to measure a
15 clonogenic cell, not what it's doing right now, but
16 a clonogenic cell.

17 And I want to make that because it's
18 important. Just because they're proliferating
19 doesn't mean they're clonogenic. Just because
20 they're dormant doesn't mean they're not clonogenic.

21 DR. UHR: I agree.

22 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Uhr, I have a
23 question to your opinion to your experiment. Are
24 you getting -- this method that you are using for

1 epithelial cells, is this applicable to other types
2 of cells, like hematopoietic cells?

3 DR. UHR: I think it may well be
4 applicable. That will be much more of a challenge.
5 I mean, the epithelial cell, coming from the
6 ectoderm, and the blood elements from the mesoderm
7 obviously have different genetic programs. So
8 there's just a plethora of markers on the cell
9 surface and intracellularly which distinguish them,
10 and that's why we're able to get down to this
11 sensitivity.

12 Now, when you begin to deal with other,
13 let's say, hematopoietic tumors, I mean, that's
14 going to be more of a challenge. You're going to
15 have to look for quantitative differences, et
16 cetera, plus mutational differences.

17 I think it may be solvable, but I'm not
18 the one who's going to do it. It's a tough job.

19 DR. RAZZAQUE: You need more money from
20 NCI.

21 DR. UHR: No, I can't add anything to
22 what has already been said.

23 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Hoon, please, any
24 comment?

1 DR. HOON: I agree with the other two
2 panel members.

3 One of the factors it is is the source
4 of actually where you're going to harvest the cells
5 from which will be critical. If you're going to do
6 it from the lymph node, the gold standard will be
7 immunohistochemistry, which is acceptable by others.

8 Blood, it will be a little bit
9 different, and bone marrow aspirations for breast
10 cancer patients, immunohistochemistry is used.

11 However, the other aspect of it is what
12 level of disease. Most of the studies that have
13 been presented are giving vaccines to patients with
14 tumor burden, and the micrometastasis or so-called
15 occult tumors I don't think are going to really
16 affect overall what the influence of the overall if
17 they do contaminate and grow, especially in patients
18 with tumor burden already.

19 The patients who are disease free or
20 earlier stages where you are giving vaccine and you
21 are giving tumor cells, there are some studies out
22 there that do affect, but those require clinical
23 follow-up in order to really determine that.

24 So those patients who are early stage or
25 have no evidence of disease, it will be a critical

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 factor, but advanced patients, we are probably
2 pushing occult tumor cell's detection a little bit
3 too far.

4 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Hoon, I have a
5 question. Your PCR -- okay. Address first, please.
6 Okay.

7 DR. STEWART: Can I ask a question?
8 These methods are extremely important for early
9 detection, for prognosis, for monitoring efficacy of
10 disease, but can someone define the knowledge base
11 for the danger of taking cells out of the body to
12 make dendritic cells, taking that out of the blood,
13 adding GM-CSF and IL-4, and then putting back the
14 same tumor cells that you got from the blood, except
15 now you have them in an environment where you now
16 have dendritic cells there where you didn't before?

17 You know, maybe I'm very naive, but
18 we're just making this assumption that we have to
19 deal with this situation, and I want to know what
20 the knowledge base is that it's a dangerous
21 situation. Like has this been done in animal models
22 where there's circulating tumor cells and, you know,
23 you make dendritic cells, put them back, and the
24 mice get tumors or any evidence in humans?

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 DR. MARTI: That's a major concern.
2 These not necessarily grafts, but these products, if
3 they're going to be derived from an individual that
4 has circulating tumor cells, we're seeking input on
5 that. Do those cells need to be purged? If so,
6 how? And what will be the lower limit?

7 And a subsequent question is: can you
8 irradiate this product? And if you can irradiate
9 it, how much?

10 DR. STEWART: I'm just asking the very
11 first question you mentioned. Do those cells have
12 to be purged? That's what I'm trying to get past.

13 DR. MARTI: Well, certainly from the
14 stem cell labeling studies in pediatrics, the cells
15 that were still contaminating the graft are the ones
16 in the majority of patients that give rise to the
17 relapse of the leukemia.

18 DR. LOTZE: Actually it's neuroblastoma
19 studies you're talking about?

20 DR. MARTI: I'm sorry. I stand
21 corrected.

22 DR. LOTZE: These are from Malcolm
23 Brenner, and in actual fact I think the best answer
24 to Jeff's question may be situations not where you
25 transfer back into the same individual, but the

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 experiments where people actually transplant them
2 into another human being, which occurs in the
3 setting of human transplantation.

4 DR. STEWART: But that's totally
5 different. That I understand. I'm talking about
6 the same patient.

7 DR. LOTZE: But that is the fear, and I
8 think Dr. Uhr's comment was relevant in the sense
9 that maybe all of the patients we see already have
10 at the time of detection disseminated tumor, and so
11 the issue is will it transfer back into somebody
12 who's nominally cured or seemingly cured of disease;
13 transfer back into that individual of a fixed tumor
14 inoculum increase their likelihood if those cells
15 are viable, and to use the term that's been bandied
16 around, clonogenic. Does that decrease their
17 likelihood of being alive ten, 20, 30, 40 years
18 later?

19 That's the question I think you're
20 asking, Jeff, and for that there is no data. I mean
21 the only data that exists is in the setting of Human
22 A transferred into Human B because you don't know
23 what's going to happen.

24 DR. STEWART: That's another story.

1 DR. LOTZE: But can I bring up an
2 anecdote? Because I think it's an issue that's
3 confronted us before, and if you'll allow me, I had
4 a young woman in her late 30s who had widespread
5 metastatic colo-rectal cancer who had two identical
6 triplets. She is one of identical triplets, and I
7 wanted to immunize one of her triplets to her
8 tumors, and I pulled a variety of different
9 oncologists and scientists around the world, none of
10 whom felt it was ethical for me to do that because
11 of the concern associated with potentially giving
12 viable tumor to an identical litter mate, if you
13 will, in whom my assuredness of knowing that that
14 tumor was not going to grow in that individual could
15 not be 100 percent.

16 So I said, "Well, what if it's a really,
17 really small chance?"

18 Still the ethical issues prevailed, and
19 so I think the question that Jeff asked is an
20 important one because if you play this movie ahead
21 frame by frame, I think what we're going to end up
22 doing if we are successful is using some kind of
23 therapy in which DCs are charged with early lesions
24 or tumors derived from early lesions as a therapy.

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 And I think the question that was raised
2 is: do we need to know that those tumor cells are
3 not viable? Do we need to know that they're not
4 capable of limiting someone's survival? And is the
5 tradeoff, meaning the opportunity of potentially
6 doing benefit, as opposed to the intrinsic risk
7 worth it?

8 And somehow we're going to have to
9 breach these kinds of issues. So I think the FDA is
10 to be congratulated to ask the questions. We're
11 going to test in people with advanced disease first.
12 So I agree with the notion that it doesn't matter so
13 much for people who have got ten other lesions in
14 their liver.

15 But when we move it into a setting,
16 which would be nice if we ever get to that point,
17 where we can treat the early breast cancer lesion or
18 the early colo-rectal lesion with an autologous
19 vaccine, then those questions will become, I think,
20 terribly germane.

21 DR. MARTI: I think you're right, Mike,
22 but I think the most important thing is that we're
23 able to measure them now, and we'll just have to
24 wait for the clinical follow-up.

1 DR. LOTZE: Yeah, I think we'll get some
2 information in the setting where we treat patients
3 with early stage disease or patients who are very
4 likely to recur, and I think we should have the
5 courage to try and do something to help that group
6 of patients and shouldn't limit us in terms of our
7 ability to use these kinds of therapies.

8 But I think somehow knowing whether
9 cells are viable or not or capable of modulating
10 someone's long-term outcome is going to be a
11 critical question.

12 DR. STEWART: There's another corollary
13 to what you're bringing up to, and that is what is a
14 reasonable sample size of what you're going to
15 reinject back into the patient. Is it the entire
16 specimen that you have to process to find out if
17 there's any tumor cells there, in which case it's
18 lost to the injection back into the patient?

19 Because you're not going to find tumor
20 cells if the frequency that you measure is too low
21 and the one that you look for is in the one that
22 you're injecting into the patient.

23 Now, one thing about flow cytometry is
24 that you could process the entire specimen and
25 collect it instead of throwing it out, and you would

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 interrogate the entire specimen and know whether the
2 tumor cells are there, and you'd have a marker for
3 clonogenicity, right?

4 So you could say this one is clonogenic,
5 and that one isn't. So we'll just sort it out of
6 the way so that it's not there anymore, and there
7 you are.

8 DR. LOTZE: It sounds costly.

9 (Laughter.)

10 DR. RAZZAQUE: A question there?

11 DR. KUZNETSON: Dr. Uhr, you can detect
12 very low frequency of tumor cells in blood, and what
13 technique allows you to increase the detection of
14 frequency of tumor cells up to ten in minus eight?

15 Because I think there is some
16 contradiction between your prediction, your
17 estimation, and Dr. Stewart's estimation. You have
18 two order differences between your estimations, if I
19 understand.

20 And my question is: how many antibodies
21 are used for detection of the cells? This is my
22 first question.

23 And I do have some comparison analysis
24 of new technique with previous one which you used in
25 BCL-1 lymphoma when you detect dormancy or very low

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 frequency cells with PCR -- PCR reaction or using
2 monoclonal antibodies against idiotopic antigens.

3 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Stewart or Dr. Uhr,
4 please.

5 DR. STEWART: Do you want to do that
6 first?

7 DR. RAZZAQUE: Yes.

8 DR. STEWART: Go ahead.

9 DR. UHR: Well, I think the difference
10 is the immunomagnetic purification. In the
11 beginning I stressed to you that this was a critical
12 step, and two of the known variables are the beads
13 and their size. You just can't allow any clumping
14 or one has a problem.

15 And the second one I mentioned was the
16 anti-epithelial or the adhesion antibody, and that's
17 absolutely critical, and it's a little bizarre, but
18 anyone who works with even big beads will tell you
19 that for reasons not clear, some antibodies work
20 very well and others don't.

21 So, for example, the one that we're
22 using, which was first described by Dorothea Hurlin,
23 is excellent. We get 100 percent recovery, and we
24 get that 10,000-fold purification before flow

S A G CORP.

1 cytometry, which is essential. That's ten to the
2 fourth already.

3 Now, we've used another antibody which
4 we got from another company I won't mention where
5 basically we get ten percent recovery, and not only
6 that; we don't get good purification, which is very
7 bizarre. I don't want to spend too much time.
8 You'd think they'd go inversely, but we lose at two
9 levels.

10 So I think it's the very careful
11 selection of the right anti-EPCAN antibody and the
12 kind of beads, and I mean, this isn't something we
13 worked out in one week. I mean a postdoctoral
14 fellow spent a year trying to get this down.

15 But I don't know that there's that much
16 difference. From what I understood from Dr.
17 Stewart, it didn't sound as though we have a two log
18 difference at all, and remember we still can get
19 some cells in our normals.

20 I mean to reach the full sensitivity,
21 the gold standard I talked about, we're going to
22 have to show that those are not tumor cells and they
23 are events, you know. We're going to have to show
24 even if they're epithelial cells that they're not

S A G CORP.

1 tumor cells to be able to say that we can detect one
2 tumor cell in 30 mL of blood.

3 DR. RAZZAQUE: Dr. Stewart, briefly
4 please.

5 DR. STEWART: I'd like to say that the
6 one really important advantage with the iron
7 technique is right up front you get rid of a lot of
8 noise. I mean you are already starting with a
9 preparation in which all these other cells that are
10 bothering me because I don't do it are gone.

11 That is a tremendous advantage because
12 whenever you add multiple markers, you increase
13 specificity because the probability of noise being
14 coincident in a multi-parameter sense goes away
15 factorially, and when you start out with getting rid
16 of ten to the fourth units of your noise right up
17 front, that is impressive.

18 DR. RAZZAQUE: Are there anymore
19 comments from the panel?

20 DR. KUZNETSON: I agree with you this is
21 a really effective way. If you've used few markers
22 simultaneously on the same system, you can increase
23 dramatically the sensitivity, but what about
24 robustness of these measurements? Because you have
25 a very sensitive system, and this system could be

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 not so stable, and it could have unstable detection.
2 If you repeat the detection, you can get dramatic
3 differences in amplitude of your measurements and
4 frequency.

5 Do you have some observation about --

6 DR. STEWART: I don't think I'm
7 following where you -- I don't understand what
8 you're saying.

9 DR. KUZNETSON: I said about robustness
10 of measurements and reproducibility of measurements.
11 If you repeat the same measurements with the same
12 object after a few minutes or a few hours or a few
13 days, what happens if you repeat measurements and
14 how many cells you will detect with this very
15 sensitive method?

16 DR. RAZZAQUE: I would like to say that
17 I would like to end this session. Can you ask him
18 after this session this question specially?

19 I would like to thank the panel for your
20 available discussions, and I would like to give this
21 audience to Dr. Noguchi for concluding remarks.

22 (Applause.)

23 DR. NOGUCHI: For all of the hardy
24 survivors here, which I don't know if you're

1 clonogenic or not, but I do want to thank everyone
2 who has participated.

3 Cancer, in general, is a dreadful
4 disease, and it's well shown by over half of the
5 INDs submitted to FDA are for cancer, and in fact,
6 that reflects the importance of this whole
7 conference.

8 I would like to say that we've learned a
9 lot. I commend everyone for the courage in being
10 able to try to move forward on both the clinical
11 trials, as well as the basic studies, and as we've
12 heard, we seem to be kind of at the beginning of
13 developing appropriate potency assays, as well as
14 monitoring assays.

15 But I do have to say I very much
16 appreciated this last session. Most of my training
17 is in pathology and looking at tumors, and so I
18 agree if you could see it, it makes a lot more sense
19 to me than an adverse immune response.

20 I thank all of you for attending here.
21 We will be making some decision on the
22 recommendations and discussion that is being done
23 here. If you really like this sort of thing, I
24 think we might want to do it again, although I can
25 tell you that Dr. Puri and Dr. Razzaque can tell you

S A G CORP.

202/797-2525 Washington, D.C. Fax: 202/797-2525

1 that they'll be very appreciative if somebody else
2 hosts this meeting.

3 (Laughter.)

4 DR. NOGUCHI: But it is very important
5 for all of us in all of these fields to continue to
6 get together because I think it's only when we apply
7 all of the modern technology, all of the best minds
8 that we can ever make progress in this deadly
9 disease.

10 Thank you all very much.

11 (Whereupon, at 5:29 p.m., the workshop
12 was concluded.)

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25